00085464

BOMBAY BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 15 June, 2016

00085464

TRAVELS

FROM

S^t. PETERSBURG

IN

RUSSIA,

TO

DIVERSE PARTS

OF

ASIA.

85464 ac

BY

JOHN BELL,

OF ANTERMONY.

VOLUME II.

CONTAINING

The continuation of the journey between MOSCO and PEKIN. To which is added, a translation of the Journal of Mr. de LANGE, resident of RUSSIA at the court of PEKIN, in the years 1721 & 1722.

A journey from MOSCO to DERBENT in PERSIA, in the year 1722.

A journey from ST. PETERSBURG to CONSTANTINOPLE, in the years 1737 and 1738.

GLASGOW:

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR BY ROBERT AND ANDREW FOULIS

PRINTERS TO THE UNIVERSITY.

M.DCC.LXIII.

Sold by R. & A. FOULIS, and A. STALKER at GLASGOW; KINCAID & BELL at EDINBURGH; A. MILLER, J. NOURSE, T. BECKET & P. A de HONDT, and C. HENDERSON in LONDON; J. LEAKE, and J. FREDERICK at BATH; and T. CADELL at BRISTOL.

A

JOURNE

FROM

ST. PETERSBU

TO

PEKIN

CHAPTER IX.

Occurrences at PEKIN, *audience of the ambaſſ*

THE 19th, the prime miniſter, accom
the maſter of the ceremonies and fiv
came to compliment the ambaſſador.
they entered the gate, two of their attend
before them, at ſome diſtance, making a
noiſe; the uſual ſign that ſome perſon of di
coming. ALOY deſired the ambaſſador wo
him a copy of his credentials; which was no
complied with, till theſe miniſters abſolutely
ed on it; alledging that the Emperor never
ved any letters from his beſt friends, among
he reckoned his Czariſh Majeſty the chief, wi
knowing the contents. The LATIN copy was a

he original being in the RUSSIAN language
ſter of the ceremonies and the miſſionaries
ſlated it into CHINESE, took their leave. But
la remained for the ſpace of three hours,
erent ſubjects. This miniſter, it ſeems,
ortſman. He asked to ſee the ambaſſa-
hich were a few grey-hounds, and ſome
k-hounds. He was deſired to receive,
any of them which pleaſed him beſt; but
ept only of a couple of grey-hounds.
an time, the Emperor ſent an officer to
r the ambaſſador's health; who brought
him a table, carried by four men, and co-
yellow ſilk, on which was placed variety of
confections; and, in the middle, a large
xcellent mutton. The officer acquainted
ſſador that theſe proviſions were brought
e Emperor's own table; and therefore hoped he
eat of them. This circumſtance was accounted
lar mark of the Emperor's favour.

e day following, the ambaſſador had a viſit from
eſident of the council for weſtern affairs, called
noma, accompanied by four miſſionaries, two of
were meſſieurs PARANIM and FRIDELII. The

con-

converſation turned chiefly on the ceremonial of the ambaſſador's introduction to the Emperor, which was a matter not eaſily ſettled. The principal points, inſiſted on by the ambaſſador, were, that he might deliver his credentials into the Emperor's own hands, and be excuſed from bowing thrice three times on entering his Majeſty's preſence; to which cuſtom all muſt ſubmit who appear before the Emperor. The preſident, on the contrary, aſſerted, that the conſtant practice in CHINA, for many ages paſt, was directly oppoſite to theſe demands; that their Emperors never received letters of credence with their own hands; that the cuſtom was for the ambaſſador to lay them on a table, at ſome diſtance from the throne, or the place where the Emperor may happen to ſit; after which they were delivered to the Emperor by the officer appointed for that purpoſe. CHAP. 1720

At the ſame time, the preſident invited the ambaſſador to an entertainment, to be given at a palace in the city, where, he ſaid, the Emperor would be preſent, and ſpeak with him. His excellency replied, he would accept of the invitation, provided he might, on that occaſion, deliver the Czar his maſter's letter. He was told this was neither a proper place nor time

CHAP. IX. 1720. for that purpoſe; but that the Emperor intended to give him a publick audience very ſoon, and receive his credentials in form.

The ambaſſador was apprehenſive, that the Emperor having already ſeen a copy of his credentials, ſhould he alſo ſee himſelf at the entertainment, his publick audience might thereby be retarded; and therefore declined the invitation. It appeared, however, afterwards, that this ſuſpicion was without foundation; and that the Emperor intended nothing more than to do honour to the ambaſſador.

The 21ſt, the aleggadá paid a ſecond viſit. His ſervants brought tea ready made, ſome jars of arrack, with fruits and confections. From this day little material happened, except daily meſſages from court relating to the ceremonial, till the 27th; when this affair was, at laſt, adjuſted on the following terms. "That the "ambaſſador ſhould comply with the eſtabliſhed cuſ- "toms of the court of CHINA; and, when the Empe- "ror ſent a miniſter to RUSSIA, he ſhould have in- "ſtructions to conform himſelf, in every reſpect, to "the ceremonies in uſe at that court." This affair gave the miniſtry at PEKIN much trouble; and, I muſt confeſs,

confeſs, the miſſionaries took great pains to ſoften matters on both ſides.

On the 28th, the day appointed for the ambaſſador's publick audience of the Emperor, horſes were brought to our lodgings for the ambaſſador and his retinue; the Emperor being then at a country-houſe, called TZAN-SHU-YANG, about ſix miles weſtward from PEKIN. We mounted at eight in the morning, and about ten arrived at court; where we alighted, at the gate, which was guarded by a ſtrong party of ſoldiers. The commanding officers conducted us into a large room, where we drank tea, and ſtaid about half an hour till the Emperor was ready to receive us. We then entered a ſpacious court, encloſed with high brick-walls, and regularly planted with ſeveral rows of foreſt-trees, about eight inches diameter, which I took to be limes. The walks are ſpread with ſmall gravel; and the great walk is terminated by the hall of audience, behind which are the Emperor's private apartments. On each ſide of the great walk are fine flower-plots and canals. As we advanced, we found all the miniſters of ſtate, and officers belonging to the court, ſeated upon fur-cuſhions, croſs-legged, before the hall, in the open air; among theſe, places were appointed

CHAP. IX. 1720. appointed for the ambaſſador and his retinue; and in this ſituation we remained, in a cold froſty morning, till the Emperor came into the hall. During this interval, there were only two or three ſervants in the hall, and not the leaſt noiſe was heard from any quarter. The entry to the hall is by ſeven marble ſteps, the whole length of the building. The floor is finely paved with a neat checker-work of white and black marble. The edifice is quite open to the ſouth; and the roof ſupported by a row of handſome wooden pillars, octangular, and finely poliſhed; before which is hung a large canvaſs, as a ſhelter from the heat of the ſun, or inclemencies of the weather.

After we had waited about a quarter of an hour, the Emperor entered the hall at a back-door, and ſeated himſelf upon the throne; upon which all the company ſtood. The maſter of the ceremonies now deſired the ambaſſador, who was at ſome diſtance from the reſt, to walk into the hall; and conducted him by one hand, while he held his credentials in the other. Having aſcended the ſteps, the letter was laid on a table placed for that purpoſe, as had been previouſly agreed; but the Emperor beckoned to the ambaſſador, and directed him to approach; which he no ſooner perceived,

perceived, than he took up the credentials, and, attended by ALOY, walked up to the throne, and, kneeling, laid them before the Emperor; who touched them with his hand, and inquired after his Czariſh Majeſty's health. He then told the ambaſſador, that the love and friendſhip he entertained for his majeſty were ſuch, that he had even diſpenſed with an eſtabliſhed cuſtom of the empire in receiving his letter. CHAP. IX. 1720.

During this part of the ceremony, which was not long, the retinue continued ſtanding without the hall; and we imagined, the letter being delivered, all was over. But the maſter of the ceremonies brought back the ambaſſador; and then ordered all the company to kneel, and make obeiſance nine times to the Emperor. At every third time we ſtood up, and kneeled again. Great pains were taken to avoid this piece of homage, but without ſucceſs. The maſter of the ceremonies ſtood by, and delivered his orders in the TARTAR language, by pronouncing the words *morgu* and *boſs*; the firſt meaning to bow, and the other to ſtand; two words which I cannot ſoon forget.

This piece of formality being ended, the maſter of the ceremonies conducted the ambaſſador, and the ſix gentlemen of the retinue, with one interpreter, into the

CHAP. IX. 1720. the hall. Our clerks, inferior officers, and ſervants, remained ſtill without; together with many courtiers and officers of diſtinction. We were ſeated on our own cuſhions, in a row upon the floor, to the right of the throne, about ſix yards diſtance. And immediately behind us ſat three miſſionaries, dreſſed in CHINESE habits, who conſtantly attend the court. On this occaſion, they ſerved, by turns, as interpreters.

Soon after we were admitted, the Emperor called the ambaſſador to him, took him by the hand, and talked very familiarly on various ſubjects. Among other things, he told him, that, he was informed his Czariſh Majeſty expoſed his perſon to many dangers, particularly by water; at which he was much ſurpriſed; but deſired he would take the advice of an old man; and not hazard his life, by committing himſelf to the rage of the mercileſs waves and winds, where no valour could avail. We were near enough to hear this piece of friendly and wholeſome advice.

This converſation being finiſhed, the Emperor gave the ambaſſador, with his own hand, a gold cup full of warm taraſſun; a ſweet fermented liquor, made of various ſorts of grain, as pure and ſtrong as CANARY wine, of a diſagreeable ſmell, though not unpleaſant to

the

the taſte. This cup was brought about to the gentle- CHAP. IX.
men; and all of us drank the Emperor's health; who ob- 1720.
ſerved, that this liquor would warm us that cold morning. His Majeſty alſo found many faults with our dreſs, as improper for a cold climate; and, I muſt confeſs, I thought him in the right.

On the left ſide of the throne ſat five Princes, ſons to the Emperor; together with all the miniſters and grandees of the court. The taraſſun, however, was handed about to none but ourſelves, and the JESUITS behind us. Eight or ten of the Emperor's grandſons now entered the hall. They were very handſome, and plainly dreſſed; having nothing to diſtinguiſh them, but the dragon with five claws, woven into their outer garments, and a yellow tunic of ſattin, bearing the ſame device, with little caps on their heads faced with ſable. After them came the muſicians carrying their inſtruments. By this time the hall was pretty full; and, what is ſurpriſing, there was not the leaſt noiſe, hurry, or confuſion. Every one perfectly knows his own buſineſs; and the thick paper ſoles of the CHINESE boots prevent any noiſe from their walking on the floor. By theſe means every thing goes on with great regularity; but at the ſame time with wonderful quick-

CHAP. IX. 1720.

neſs. In ſhort, the characteriſtic of the court of PEKIN is order and decency, rather than grandeur and magnificence.

The Emperor ſat croſs-legged on his throne. He was dreſſed in a ſhort looſe coat of ſable, having the fur outward, lined with lamb-skin; under which he wore a long tunic of yellow ſilk, interwoven with figures of golden dragons with five claws; which device no perſon is allowed to bear except the imperial family. On his head was a little round cap, faced with black fox-skin; on the top of which I obſerved a large beautiful pearl in the ſhape of a pear, which, together with a taſſel of red-ſilk tied below the pearl, was all the ornament I ſaw about this mighty monarch. The throne alſo was very ſimple, being made of wood; but of neat workmanſhip. It is raiſed five eaſy ſteps from the floor, is open towards the company; but has a large japanned ſcreen on each ſide to defend it from the wind.

The maſter of the ceremonies, and a few officers of the houſhold, were dreſſed in robes of ſtate, of gold and ſilver ſtuffs, with monſtrous dragons on their backs and breaſts. Moſt of the miniſters of ſtate were dreſſed very plain, having nothing like ornaments about them

them; a few only had large rubies, ſapphires, and e- CHAP. IX.
meralds. Theſe precious ſtones are cut into the ſhape 1720.
of pears, through which a hole is drilled, to fix them on the top of their bonnets. Theſe holes diminiſh the value of the ſtones, one half at leaſt, at an EUROPEAN market. I once ſaw, however, one of theſe rubies, with a hole drilled through it, which was bought at PEKIN for a trifle, valued at ten thouſand pounds Sterling in EUROPE. But ſuch bargains are rarely to be met with; this being a ſtone of the firſt claſs, for bigneſs and purity. As for diamonds, the CHINESE, it ſeems, do not much eſteem them; for few diamonds are found in CHINA, and theſe very rudely cut and ſhaped; and ſo, indeed, are all their coloured ſtones.

It was now about noon; at which time our entertainment began to be ſerved up; (of which I ſhall alſo give ſome account.) There were firſt brought neat little tables, covered with variety of fruits and confections, and placed before all the company. It ſeems to be the faſhion in this country to bring the deſert firſt; at leaſt that was the caſe at all the entertainments where I was preſent. In this, as in many other things, the behaviour of the CHINESE is quite contrary to that of the EUROPEANS. Soon after the

CHAP. IX. 1720. fruits, the victuals were ſerved in the ſame manner, and placed on ſmall tables before the gueſts. They conſiſted of fowls, mutton, and pork, all very good of their kinds; and the whole was either boiled, or ſtewed with pickles; but nothing roaſted. The Emperor ſent ſeveral diſhes from his own table to the ambaſſador, particularly ſome boiled pheaſants; which were very agreeable.

The muſick played all the time of dinner. The chief inſtruments were flutes, harps, and lutes, all tuned to the CHINESE taſte. There was alſo ſome vocal muſick; an old TARTAR, in particular, ſung a warlike ſong, to which he beat time, by ſtriking, with two ivory rods, upon a chime of little bells that hung before him. A young TARTAR ſung a call to war, dancing at the ſame time, and keeping time by drawing the head of an arrow a-croſs his ſhield. Then entered two little girls, who danced and ſung while the inſtruments played. After them came tumblers, who performed various feats of activity, in the court before the hall. Theſe were ſucceeded by wreſtlers, fencers, and other performers of the ſame ſpecies. The Emperor ſent frequently to the ambaſſador, to ask how he liked the muſick, dancing, and other entertain-

tertainments. He alſo inquired about ſeveral princes and ſtates of EUROPE, with whoſe power, by ſea and land, he was not unacquainted. But, above all, he wondered how the kingdom of SWEDEN could hold out ſo long againſt ſo great a power as that of RUSSIA. After this converſation, the Emperor informed the ambaſſador that he would ſoon ſend for him again; but, as the night was cold, he would detain him no longer at preſent; and immediately ſtept from his throne, and returned to his private apartments by the ſame paſſage he left them. We alſo mounted, and repaired to our lodgings in the city, ſo well ſatisfied with the gracious and friendly reception of the Emperor, that all our former hardſhips were almoſt forgot. CHAP. IX. 1720.

The 29th, the Mandarin TULISHIN came to our lodgings, with two clerks, and took a liſt of the preſents, ſent by the Czar to the Emperor. Theſe conſiſted of various rich furs, clocks, repeating watches ſet in diamonds, mirrors; and the battle of POLTAVA, nicely turned in ivory, done by his Czariſh Majeſty's own hands, and ſet in a curious frame. The ambaſſador, at the ſame time, delivered to the Mandarin, as a preſent from himſelf to the Emperor, ſeveral toys

of

CHAP. IX. of value, a fine managed horſe, ſome grey-hounds, and
1720. large buck-hounds.

Every thing was entered in a book, very exactly, even the names and qualities of each particular dog. There was alſo tied about the neck of each dog, a yellow ſilk-cord, drawn through a hole in a little bit of wood, which hung from the dogs neck, as a mark of its belonging to the court. The CHINESE, in general, are very fond of little harlequin dogs that play monkey tricks. A ſervant of ours had one of that kind, which he ſold for an hundred ounces of ſilver.

The ſame day, all the fruits and confections of the entertainment given at the audience, which remained, were ſent to the ambaſſador's lodgings. They were carried in great ſtate through the ſtreets, covered with yellow ſilk; and an officer of the court walked before the proceſſion.

Next day, the Emperor ſent to our lodgings ſeveral large diſhes of maſſive gold, containing a kind of delicate fiſh, called mu, already dreſſed; but in ſuch a manner that I did not know to what to compare it. Alſo ſome bowls filled with excellent vermicelli; and a ſort of paſtry-puffs, baked over the ſteam of boiling water, exceeding, in whiteneſs, any thing of that kind

I ever ſaw. All theſe things were ſent from his Majeſty's own table; an honour which he grants but ſeldom. It ſeems he was reſolved we ſhould have proviſions in abundance; for, beſides all theſe, we received our daily allowance, in which we were by no means ſtinted. CHAP. IX. 1720.

After dinner, the maſter of the ceremonies, accompanied with the captain of the eunuchs, and three Jeſuits, came to viſit the ambaſſador. This eunuch was a great favourite of the Emperor, on account of the knowledge he had acquired in mathematics and mechanics. He made the ambaſſador a preſent of a ſmall enamelled gold-watch, and a wind-gun, both of his own making. The Emperor himſelf is a great lover of the arts, ſo far, that, whoever diſtinguiſhes himſelf, in any uſeful branch of them, is ſure to meet with proper encouragement. The eunuch alſo made a preſent, to the ambaſſador, of a ſteel to ſtrike fire; and then deſired to ſee the preſents; which was granted. At taking leave, ALOY told the ambaſſador, that the Emperor intended to give him a CHINESE dreſs, which was more convenient and warmer than the EUROPEAN.

December the firſt, MERIN-SANGUIN, a general officer

CHAP. IX. 1720.

cer, and brother to the firſt miniſter of ſtate, came to viſit the ambaſſador. Notwithſtanding the high rank of this military gentleman, he had no ſword about him; for, at PEKIN, no perſon, not even officers and ſoldiers, except when on duty, wears a ſword, or any other weapon, in the city.

The day following, the ambaſſador had a ſecond audience of the Emperor, at the ſame palace. On this occaſion the Czar's preſents were carried to court, by a number of people ſent for that purpoſe. The Emperor viewed them all at a diſtance; after which they were delivered to an officer appointed by his majeſty to receive them. This audience was held in a private hall within the inner-court, where only the officers of the houſhold, and the gentlemen of the retinue, were preſent. We were entertained in the ſame manner as before. The Emperor converſed very familiarly with the ambaſſador, on various ſubjects; and talked of peace and war, in particular, in the ſtyle of a philoſopher. In the evening, we returned to the city, in a cold north wind, which blew the duſt about in clouds. Scarcely had we arrived, when the fruits and confections, according to cuſtom, were ſent to our lodgings.

The

This evening, one of the Emperor's grandſons came to viſit the ambaſſador. He was a genteel youth, about fourteen years of age, and had not above half a dozen of attendants. CHAP. IX. 1720.

Next day, the weather continued cold and froſty. The ſky was clear, and a ſtrong wind at north-weſt, blowing the duſt about. I obſerved that the north-weſt winds are the coldeſt in this place; as they come over the vaſt tracts of ice and ſnow in SIBERIA.

The 4th, there was a fall of ſnow, to the deepneſs of ſeven or eight inches; which was immediately thrown into heaps, and the ſtreets clean ſwept. This day the miſſionaries ſent a preſent to the ambaſſador, conſiſting of ſeveral ſorts of veniſon, and wild-fowl, and a greater variety of fine fruits, and confections, than I ever ſaw in any country; together with a couple of jars of wine made by themſelves. Among the fruits there were ſome ſpecies which I had never before ſeen; particularly a ſort of apple, about the ſize of a common orange, with a ſmooth skin of a yellowiſh colour, very ſoft and ſweet, or rather luſcious; alſo a fruit about the bigneſs of a walnut, but quite round, reſembling in taſte a prune, but far more delicious; it contains a ſmooth hard ſtone; and the whole is covered

CHAP. IX. 1720. with a thin browniſh ſhell, ſo brittle that it is eaſily broken between the finger and thumb. Some of theſe ſhells are rough, and others ſmooth. They ſerve to prevent the tender fruit from being devoured by birds, and from flying duſt; and, what is ſomething uncommon, the fruit does not adhere to the ſhell, but a ſmall vacuity is left between them. It is not only pleaſant to the taſte, but is accounted very wholeſome.

The 5th, the ambaſſador had a third audience of the Emperor, in the palace at PEKIN. As ſome affairs relating to the two empires were to be diſcuſſed, the ſecretary only, M. de LANGE, accompanied the ambaſſador. After he was introduced, the Emperor told him, he had given orders to the tribunal for weſtern affairs to hear the ſubject of his commiſſion; and then retired to his own apartments, leaving his miniſters to tranſact the buſineſs; which was ſoon finiſhed on this occaſion; and the ambaſſador returned to his lodgings.

The 6th, being ST. NICOLAS' day, a great feſtival in the GREEK church, the ambaſſador went to the RUSSIAN chapel in PEKIN to hear divine ſervice. This houſe ſtands within the city, under the eaſt wall; and was built, by the bounty of the preſent Emperor KAMHI, on the following occaſion.

About

About the year 1688, there happened a difference betwixt the government of SIBERIA and the CHINESE, about a ſmall fort, called ALBAZIN, which the RUSSIANS had built upon the banks of the river AMOOR. The CHINESE alledged the fort was erected on their territories; and, jealous of the approach of ſuch powerful neighbours, made ſeveral fruitleſs repreſentations to the governor of SIBERIA to have it demoliſhed. The Emperor, at laſt, impatient of longer delay, ſent an army of above one hundred thouſand men, to do by force what could not be accompliſhed by negotiation. They inveſted the place on all ſides, and raiſed batteries againſt it. After a vigorous defence, the garriſon, conſiſting of about three or four hundred COSSACKS, was obliged to ſurrender for want of proviſions. No terms could be obtained; and all the RUSSIANS were made priſoners of war. In conſequence of which they were carried to PEKIN, where the Emperor generouſly aſſigned them houſes apart from the reſt of the inhabitants, permitted the free exerciſe of their religion, and gave them a daily allowance equal with his own ſoldiers. By this mild treatment they were enabled to build the little chapel, which they ſtill poſſeſs. The deſcendents of theſe priſoners are pret-

CHAP. IX. 1720.

CHAP. IX. 1720. ty numerous, and uſeful to their countrymen the RUSSIANS as interpreters. I formerly mentioned that theſe diſputes were ended on the following terms; the priſoners on both ſides were to remain unexchanged, and the fort of ALBAZIN to be deſtroyed; ſince which time the two empires have continued in good correſpondence. The inhabitants of SIBERIA, indeed, regret much the loſs of their fort; as it ſtood in a fine climate, gave them poſſeſſion of a large extent of country northward from the AMOOR; and, beſides, opened a paſſage down that river to the JAPANESE ocean. It was, however, the occaſion of eſtabliſhing the GREEK church in CHINA; which ſtill continues to flouriſh, though its members are not very numerous. As one prieſt dies, another from SIBERIA ſucceeds him; who minds chiefly his own ſmall flock, and thinks very little of making converts. This circumſtance prevents their being obnoxious to the ROMAN miſſionaries, who can have no ſuſpicion of their intefering with the intereſts of their church. Theſe miſſionaries are conſtantly employed in making proſelytes, and their endeavours have been attended with ſome ſucceſs.

The 7th, we dined at the aleggada's, where we were magni-

magnificently entertained. There was no other company but ourſelves, and we ſtaid the whole day. This was the moſt elegant and complete entertainment of any I ſaw in CHINA. CHAP. IX. 1720.

About ten o'clock in the morning, chairs were ſent for the ambaſſador and gentlemen of the retinue, and horſes for the ſervants, though the prime miniſter's houſe was very near our lodgings. The chairs were carried through two courts, and ſet down at the entry into a hall, where the aleggada waited to receive the ambaſſador. After entering the hall, we were ſeated on neat cane chairs, with japanned frames, inlaid with mother of pearl. The apartment itſelf was very ſimple, open to the ſouth, and the roof ſupported, on that ſide, by a row of well turned wooden pillars. It had no cieling; but the rafters appeared finely poliſhed, and perfectly clean. The floor was paved with a checker-work of white and black marble; and in the middle of it ſtood a large braſs chafing-diſh, in ſhape of an urn, full of charcoal. At the entry were placed two large CHINA-ciſterns, filled with pure water, in which played ſome ſcores of ſmall fiſhes, catching at crumbs of bread thrown into the water. Theſe fiſhes are about the ſize of a minnow, but of a different

ſhape,

CHAP. IX. 1720. ſhape, and beautifully varied with red, white, and yellow ſpots; and therefore called the gold and ſilver fiſh. I never ſaw any of them out of this country; though, I imagine, they might eaſily be brought to EUROPE, as they are by no means of the tender kind. I had about twenty of them ſtanding in a window at my lodgings; in a morning, after a froſty night, I found all the water frozen, moſt of the fiſhes ſtiff, and ſeemingly dead; but, on putting them into cold freſh water, they all recovered, except two or three.

After we had drunk a diſh of tea, a collation of broths and victuals was placed on the tables, intermixed with variety of fruits and confections. Every perſon had a table a-part, and all were ſerved in the ſame manner. This repaſt, it ſeems, was only breakfaſt, though it might well have paſſed for dinner.

After this entertainment the aleggada carried us firſt to ſee his dogs, of which he had great variety. I formerly obſerved that this gentleman was a great ſportſman. He took greater pleaſure in talking of hounds than politicks; though, at the ſame time, he had the character of a very able miniſter, and an honeſt man.

We were now conducted through all the different apart-

apartments of his houſe, excepting only thoſe of the ladies, to which none have acceſs but himſelf, and the eunuchs who attend them. We ſaw a noble collection of many curioſities, both natural and artificial; particularly a large quantity of old porcelain or CHINA-ware, made in CHINA and JAPAN; and, at preſent, to be found only in the cabinets of the curious. They conſiſted chiefly of a great number of jars of different ſizes. He took much pleaſure in telling when and where they were manufactured; and, as far as I can remember, many of them were above two thouſand years old. He added, that, both in CHINA and JAPAN, they had loſt the art of making porcelain in that perfection they did in former times; and the fault, in his opinion, lay in the preparation of the materials. Theſe curioſities were piled up on ſhelves to the very roof of the houſe, and in ſuch order and ſymmetry as had a pretty effect. CHAP. IX. 1720.

From the houſe we went into a little garden, enclo-ſed with a high brick-wall. In the middle of it ſtood a ſmall baſin, full of water, ſurrounded with ſeveral old crooked trees and ſhrubs; among which I ſaw that which produces the famous tea. The climate about PEKIN being too cold for this ſhrub, there are only a

few

CHAP. IX. 1720. few buſhes of it to be found in the gardens of the curious. I ſhall not at preſent enlarge on this uſeful plant, which appeared like a currant-buſh, as an opportunity will occur of giving a fuller account of it before I leave this place. There was a walk round the garden, which, together with that in the middle, was covered with ſmall gravel. At each end of the middle-walk was a piece of artificial rock-work, with water running under it, through holes ſo natural they looked as if made by the current of the ſtream. The rocks were about ſeven feet high, and ſhaded with ſome old bended trees. This garden, and many other things in CHINA, diſplay the taſte of the inhabitants for imitating nature.

From the garden we were called to dinner, where we found a plentiful and elegant entertainment, ſet out in the fineſt order, far exceeding any thing of that kind we had ſeen before. We had no muſick nor dancing, and the whole was conducted with ſurpriſing decency and regularity. The entertainment laſted about two hours, after which we returned to our lodgings.

This day, our gates were opened to people of all characters, and merchants and others allowed to go in and out at pleaſure. Though all communication was

not

not prohibited before this time; it was, however, difficult; and not to be obtained without permiſſion of the proper officer. CHAP. IX. 1720.

The 8th, we dined at the ſouth convent, where the ITALIAN miſſionaries generally reſide. Here all the JESUITS in the place, to the number of ten or twelve, were aſſembled. We met with a friendly reception, and a moſt ſplendid entertainment.

This convent ſtands within the city, upon a piece of ground given to the fathers by the Emperor. He gave alſo ten thouſand ounces of ſilver towards building and adorning the chapel; which is, indeed, very neat; and handſomely decorated with pictures of ſaints, and ſcripture-pieces, by the beſt hands. An account of this remarkable benefaction of the Emperor KAMHI is cut out, in the CHINESE language, in letters of gold, and fixed above the great gate; which makes the place more reſpected. When we arrived, one of the prieſts was officiating in the chapel, where were aſſembled about one hundred CHINESE converts. At dinner we had a few bottles of wine, made in the convent; but I cannot ſay it was good; though the grapes were fine, and of an agreeable taſte.

After dinner, we were conducted to the Emperor's

CHAP. IX. 1720. ſtables, where the elephants are kept. The keeper asked the ambaſſador to walk into his apartments, till they were equipped; then we went into the court, and ſaw theſe huge animals richly capariſoned in gold and ſilver ſtuffs. Each had a rider on his back, who held in their hands ſmall battle-axes, with a ſharp pike at one end, to drive and guide them. We ſtood about an hour admiring thoſe ſagacious animals; ſome of them were very large, who, paſſing before us at equal diſtances, returned again behind the ſtables; and ſo on round and round, till there ſeemed to be no end of the proceſſion. The plot, however, was at laſt diſcovered, by the features and dreſs of the riders; and the chief keeper told us there were only ſixty of them. The climate about PEKIN is too cold for them to breed; and all theſe were brought from warmer countries. The Emperor keeps them only for ſhow, and makes no uſe of them, at leaſt in theſe northern parts. Some of them were brought near to the place where we ſat, and made obeiſance to us, by kneeling and making a dreadful noiſe; others ſucked up water from veſſels, and ſpouted it through their trunks, among the mob, or wherever the rider directed. The ſagacity of theſe animals is moſt ſurpriſing, and approach-

es

es ſo near to reaſon, that, in this reſpect, they ſurpaſs all the brute creation. After this ſhow, we took leave of the JESUITS, who had accompanied us hither, and returned to our lodgings. CHAP. IX. 1720.

Next day, all the gentlemen dined at the palace of the Emperor's ninth ſon, in conſequence of an invitation from his chief eunuch, who is a great friend to the RUSSIA-houſe. As the invitation was not from the Prince, the ambaſſador would not accept of it. Our entertainment was very magnificent, and accompanied with muſick, dancing, and a kind of comedy, which laſted moſt part of the day. The comedians were of both ſexes; if the women's parts were not performed by boys dreſſed like actreſſes. As the play was in the CHINESE language, I could underſtand nothing of it, except from the geſture and action of the performers. It ſeemed to be a parcel of detached diſſimilar interludes, without any principal end, or unity of deſign. I ſhall, therefore, only mention one ſcene, which appeared to me the moſt extraordinary. There entered, on the ſtage, ſeven warriors, all in armour, with different weapons in their hands, and terrible vizards on their faces. After they had taken a few turns about the ſtage, and ſurveyed each others ar-

CHAP. IX. 1720. mour, they, at laſt, fell a quarrelling; and, in the encounter, one of the heroes was ſlain. Then an angel deſcended from the clouds, in a flaſh of lightning, with a monſtrous ſword in his hand, and ſoon parted the combatants, by driving them all off the ſtage; which done, he aſcended in the ſame manner he came down, in a cloud of fire and ſmoke. This ſcene was ſucceeded by ſeveral comical farces, which, to me, ſeemed very diverting, though in a language I did not underſtand. The laſt character that appeared on the ſtage, was a EUROPEAN gentleman, completely dreſſed, having all his cloaths bedawbed with gold and ſilver lace. He pulled off his hat, and made a profound reverence to all that paſſed him. I ſhall leave it to any one to imagine, what an aukward figure a CHINESE muſt make in this ridiculous habit. This ſcene was interrupted, and the performers diſmiſſed, by the maſter of the feaſt, from a ſuſpicion that his gueſts might take offence. The play being finiſhed, we were entertained with jugglers, who exhibited a variety of legerdemain tricks with great dexterity.

The banquet was prolonged the whole day, excepting the time ſpent in theſe interludes. No ſooner was one courſe carried off, than another was inſtantly placed

placed upon the tables; and the whole concluded with deſerts of fruits and ſweetmeats. One would ſcarce have imagined, that luxury had made ſuch progreſs among the ſober and induſtrious CHINESE. It muſt, indeed, be obſerved, that, there is almoſt no drinking at their entertainments, as they uſe no liquor, on theſe occaſions, but tea, and, now and then, a dram of hot arrack. The CHINESE handle the two ivory or wooden pins, which they uſe inſtead of forks, with ſuch dexterity, that they can even take up needles with them. In place of napkins they ſometimes employ a few ſquare pieces of paper. CHAP. IX. 1720.

CHAPTER X.

Continuation of occurrences at PEKIN, *&c.*

THE day following, the ambaſſador had a fourth audience of the Emperor, at the palace in the city. This interview was alſo private, and the ambaſſador was attended only by his ſecretary. The Emperor repeated the aſſurances of his friendſhip for his Czariſh Majeſty, talked ſtrongly on the vanity and uncertainty of all human affairs; adding, that he was now an old man,

and

CHAP. X. and, by the courſe of nature, could not live long, and
1720. deſired to die in peace with GOD and all mankind. At taking leave, each of them was preſented with a complete CHINESE ſuit of cloaths, made of ſtrong ſilk, interwoven with dragons claws, and lined with ſable.

The 12th, we dined at the FRENCH or weſtern convent, where we again found all the miſſionaries. The chapel, and other edifices, are handſome; but not ſo grand as the ITALIAN convent. Father PARANIM is preſident of this convent; he is a man of parts and addreſs, and in great favour with the Emperor. I was informed this entertainment was given at the expence of the court, and had ſome reaſon to believe it was ſo, as it far exceeded what might reaſonably be expected from the JESUITS. The Emperor's band of muſick played all the time of dinner; after which we had jugglers and tumblers of great activity. Among the many feats and tricks performed by theſe people, I ſhall only mention two or three, which ſeemed moſt uncommon. The roof of the room where we ſat, was ſupported by wooden pillars. The juggler took a gimlet, with which he bored one of the pillars, and asked, whether we choſe red or white wine? the queſtion being anſwered, he pulled out the gimlet, and put

put a quill in the hole, through which run, as from a cask, the wine demanded. After the ſame manner, he extracted ſeveral ſorts of liquors, all which I had the curioſity to taſte, and found them good of their kinds. CHAP. X. 1720.

Another of theſe expert youths took three long ſharp-pointed knives, and, throwing them up by turns, kept one always in each hand, and the third in the air. This he continued to perform for a conſiderable time, catching conſtantly the falling knife by the handle, without ever allowing it to touch the floor. The knives were exceeding ſharp, ſo that, had he miſſed laying hold of the handles, he muſt infallibly have loſt ſome of his fingers.

The ſame perſon took a wooden ball, ſomewhat leſs than thoſe commonly uſed in bowling greens, with a hole through the middle of it, and a rod, two feet long, about the ſize of a walking ſtaff, pointed at the extremity, to fit the hole in the ball. He then toſſed the ball above a yard high, and caught it again upon the point of the rod; not in the hole of the ball, but wherever it happened to meet the point; and, in this manner, he continued to throw up and catch the ball for a conſiderable time. He now placed the ball upon

the

CHAP. X. 1720. the point of the rod, taking no notice of the hole, and twirled it round like a top, ſo quickly, that the motion could not be obſerved. This ſeemed extremely dextrous; for, all the while, he played with the ball in appearance; and, when the motion began to ſlacken, gave it a freſh twirl with his hand, as if the rod and ball had been faſtened to each other.

This perſon alſo placed a large earthen diſh, above eighteen inches diameter, upon the point of the ſame rod, and twirled it round in the ſame manner as he did the ball; during this ſwift motion, he did not always keep the point in the centre of the veſſel; on the contrary, he often held it within three inches of the brim. I ſhall only mention one inſtance more.

There were placed erect, upon the pavement of the room, two bambos, which are a kind of cane. The length of them was about twenty five feet; at the lower end I reckon them to be near five inches diameter, and, at the top, about the breadth of a crown piece. They were ſtraight, light, and ſmooth; and each ſupported by two men. Two boys then climbed up the poles, without the leaſt aſſiſtance; and, having reached the top, ſtood upright, ſometimes on one foot and ſometimes on the other, and then upon their heads. This being

being done, they laid one hand on the top of the pole, and ſtretched out their bodies almoſt at right angles to it. In this poſture they continued for a conſiderable time, and even ſhifted hands. I obſerved that much depended on the men who held the poles; one of the two at each pole having it fixed to his girdle; and they kept a ſteady eye on the motions of the boys. There were about twenty or thirty of theſe performers, who all belong to the Emperor, and never diſplay their art without his permiſſion. I am fully perſuaded, that, in tricks and feats of dexterity, few nations can equal, and none excel, the CHINESE. CHAP. X. 1720.

After theſe diverſions, we were conducted to the Emperor's glaſs-houſe, which his Imperial Majeſty often viſits with pleaſure. It was erected by himſelf, and is the firſt manufactory of the kind that ever was in CHINA. The perſon employed to ſuperintend and carry on this deſign was KILIAN STUMPFF, a GERMAN father, lately deceaſed; a man in great favour with the Emperor, and well known, in CHINA, for his ingenuity and literature. His Majeſty is ſo fond of this glaſs-work, that he ſent ſeveral of the moſt curious of its productions in a preſent to his Czariſh Majeſty. It is ſurpriſing, that the CHINESE, who

CHAP. X. 1720. have been conſtantly employed, for ſo many ages, in the manufacture of CHINA-ware, ſhould never have ſtumbled upon that of glaſs. This ſhows evidently, that the degree of heat neceſſary in their ovens muſt not be very great, or their materials free from ſand; for it is certain they had no knowledge of glaſs, of any kind, till this houſe was erected. I was informed, that, not long ago, ſome EUROPEANS brought to CANTON a parcel of priſms, or triangular glaſſes, which the CHINESE took for natural productions of rock-chryſtal; and bought them at the rate of one hundred ounces of ſilver a-piece. But, from the great quantity imported, they ſoon diſcovered their miſtake.

On the evening of the 14th, an officer came from court, deſiring the ambaſſador to wait on the Emperor at his palace of TZANGSUANG; and bring his muſicians along with him. Theſe conſiſted of performers on violins, trumpets, and kettle-drums.

Next day, we arrived at the palace, about ten of the clock; and had immediate admittance to the Emperor's private apartments, few being preſent but the officers of the houſhold and Father PARANIM. After a ſhort conference the muſick was ordered to play. There were in the room ten or twelve of the Emperor's

ror's grandſons, who ſeemed much entertained with the inſtruments. I asked an elderly gentleman, who ſtood by me, how he liked the muſick; he ſaid it was very good, but their own was better. No ladies were to be ſeen; though, I believe, ſeveral of them were behind a ſcreen at the other end of the room. CHAP. X. 1720.

The muſick being over, the Emperor ordered one of the princes to conduct the ambaſſador into the gardens belonging to the palace; into which we entered, along a draw bridge, over a canal of pure water. They abounded with ſhaded walks, arbours, and fiſh-ponds, in the CHINESE taſte. The young princes entertained themſelves by ſhooting with bows and arrows. Some of them diſplayed great dexterity, being accuſtomed from their infancy to this exerciſe, which is accounted both genteel and healthy; as the drawing of the bow extends and ſtrengthens the muſcles both of the breaſt and arms. One of the princes ſhewed us a bow and arrows, uſed by the Emperor when young; by which it appeared that he had been a perſon of extraordinary bodily ſtrength. After we had ſurveyed the gardens in every quarter, we took leave of the princes, and returned to the city.

This day, arrived in PEKIN Signior MEZZOBARBA,

CHAP. X. 1720. ambaſſador from his Holineſs the Pope to the Emperor. This gentleman was a cardinal, and patriarch of ALEXANDRIA. His retinue was compoſed of eccleſiaſticks of different orders, and a few ſervants, who were all lodged in the ITALIAN convent. They came from EUROPE to MACAO in a PORTUGUESE ſhip; from thence to CANTON; and then, by land, to this place.

The deſign of this embaſſy was to enquire into the diſputes and miſunderſtanding, that had lately ariſen in this country, betwixt the JESUITS and DOMINICANS; relating to certain rites annually performed by the CHINESE CHRISTIANS, at the tombs of their deceaſed parents or other relations. This cuſtom ſeems to be the ſame with that of the parentalia anciently in uſe among the GREEKS and ROMANS. It is univerſal in CHINA, from the emperor to the meaneſt peaſant. It ſeems the JESUITS permitted their converts to viſit the tombs of their relations; alledging, that, without ſuch indulgence, no perſon would embrace CHRISTIANITY; and, that time would wean them from ſuch ſuperſtitious ceremonies. The DOMINICANS, on the other hand, affirmed that it was next to idolatry, and declared it unlawful to allow any ſuch cuſtom; ſtrictly prohibiting all conformity in their converts. Theſe

diffe-

differences, in all probability, will not ſoon be determined. The Emperor himſelf tried to make the parties compromiſe matters; but, finding his endeavours ineffectual, he left them to agree or diſpute according to their pleaſure. He inclined, indeed, to favour the opinion of the JESUITS, which he thought moſt reaſonable. At any rate, it muſt be acknowledged an inſtance of uncommon condeſcenſion, for an heathen Emperor to intereſt himſelf ſo much in the peace of a CHRISTIAN church. CHAP. X. 1720.

The 16th, Mr. de LANGE and I paid a viſit to the Fathers FRIDELLY and KEAGGLER, at the oriental or GERMAN convent. This place is large enough; but neither the chapel nor buildings are near ſo magnificent as thoſe of the two other convents. It is called oriental, becauſe ſituated in the eaſtern diſtrict of the city. Both theſe fathers, and ſeveral other eccleſiaſticks of inferior rank in this convent, are GERMANS. One of the fathers was a clock-maker; and, by ſuch means, they frequently inſinuate themſelves into acquaintance with people of diſtinction, who protect them in times of danger. For, in CHINA, they have ſtill a great number of enemies, who would gladly ſee both them and their religion extirpated; but the favour

CHAP. X. vour of the preſent Emperor hath hitherto prevented,
1720. or diſappointed, the deſign of ſuch perſons.

The 17th, I ſent to inform the captain of the CHINESE guard, that I intended to take a turn through the city; who immediately gave orders for a ſoldier to attend me. When we paſſed through the gate, the clerk marked our names in his book, and daſhed them out at our return. I went into ſeveral ſhops, where were ſold different kinds of merchandiſe; particularly thoſe of the goldſmiths, whoſe buſineſs it is to exchange gold for ſilver, or ſilver for gold. In theſe ſhops are found vaſt quantities of thoſe valuable metals, caſt into bars of different ſizes, and piled up one upon another; which are ſold only by weight, as there is no current coin in this country; except one ſmall round piece of braſs, with a ſquare hole in the middle, through which may be run a ſtring, for the convenience of carrying them to market. This coin, called joſs by the CHINESE, is about the value of one tenth of a penny ſterling; and is extremely uſeful among the common people. With one of them, a man can buy a diſh of hot tea, a pipe of tobacco, or a dram of brandy, in the ſtreets; and a beggar may dine for three of them. There are, indeed, few beggars to be ſeen in the city; but,

but, notwithſtanding the labour and induſtry of the inhabitants, they are ſo numerous, that it is hardly poſſible to prevent many from being reduced to the utmoſt neceſſity. There are cooks ſhops, where dogs and cats, and ſuch other creatures, are dreſſed for the entertainment of theſe people. Theſe coins have KAMHI, the name of the Emperor, on one ſide; and the words TUM PAO, or the univerſal price, on the other. CHAP. X. 1720.

When the CHINESE have occaſion to buy any thing, above the value of ſixpence, they cut off a piece of ſilver, and weigh it; which is done in a trice.

Although the want of current coin ſeems ill calculated for the diſpatch of buſineſs, the CHINESE find no inconvenience on that account. It is in ſo far preferable to money, that it loſes little by wearing in the circulation; which coin does, perhaps, more than is generally imagined.

In moſt of the ſhops I found both men, and women, unveiled. They were extremely complaiſant, and gave me a diſh of tea in every ſhop. Theſe people expoſe their gold and ſilver, and other goods of value, with as much freedom and ſecurity, as the merchants do in LONDON or AMSTERDAM.

The

CHAP. X. 1720. The 19th, LANGE and I went to the FRENCH convent, but not one of the eccleſiaſticks were at home; having all gone to attend Signor MEZZOBARBA at an audience of the Emperor; except an old gentleman, Monſieur BOUVETT, who had formerly written a ſmall treatiſe, entitled, "Le portrait de l'Empereur de la "CHINE;" which he had printed in EUROPE.

The 20th, cold and windy.

The 21ſt, froſt and ſnow, which ſoftened the air, and laid the duſt.

Next day, the ambaſſador, with ſecretary LANGE, went to the council appointed for weſtern affairs, and had a conference on the ſubject of his embaſſy.

The winter here laſts only about two months; but is very ſharp and piercing while the wind is northerly. If the wind, indeed, is ſoutherly, the air is mild and pleaſant, and the ſky clear. I mentioned above, that the CHINESE have a method of keeping themſelves warm during the cold, which I ſhall now deſcribe as diſtinctly as I can.

In building a houſe, they make two ſtove-holes, one in each ſide-wall, about three feet from the gable-end. The holes are a foot ſquare; one ſerves for receiving the fewel, and the other to let out the ſmoke, when the

ſtove

ſtove is finiſhed. There is a partition of brick, which runs from one ſide of the houſe to the other, about five or ſix feet from the gable, and only eighteen inches high; which I ſhall call the front of the ſtove-bench. Between this and the gable, are built ſeveral other thin partitions of brick, in a direction at right angles to the firſt, having a ſmall opening at the extremity of each. For example, ſuppoſe the paſſage in the firſt partition to the right hand, and in the ſecond to the left; and ſo on, alternately, to the laſt, which communicates with the hole, on the other ſide of the room, for letting out the ſmoke. Theſe diviſions being made, the whole is arched, or otherwiſe covered with brick; above which is laid a layer of clay, or plaiſter, to prevent the ſmoke from riſing through the ſurface. It is plain, that below this bench there will be a winding channel for the ſmoke, from one ſide of the room to the other. A few handfuls of brush-wood, ſtraw, or any kind of fewel, will warm the bench, as much as is neceſſary, to work or ſleep without feeling cold. It is generally covered with mats, felts, or other thick ſtuffs, according to the ability of the owner. CHAP. X. 1720.

The 22d, Father KEAGGLER came to viſit us. This gentleman had been long in CHINA, and was well ac-

CHAP. X. 1720. quainted with the language, cuſtoms, and manners, of the country. In talking of the extent of PEKIN, he ſaid, that NANKIN is at leaſt three times as large. At this rate, NANKIN muſt be one of the largeſt cities in the world. He added, that it was ſomewhat diminiſhed, ſince the court had left that place to reſide at PEKIN. NANKIN is a place of the moſt extenſive commerce, and contains the greateſt manufactories, of all ſorts of ſilk and cotton ſtuffs, of any city in the country; beſides thoſe of CHINA-ware. It is watered by a fine navigable river, on which are employed an incredible number of boats, in carrying merchandiſe and paſſengers.

The 23d, cold northerly wind, and ſtrong froſt.

The 24th, CHRISTMAS-EVE; the ambaſſador heard divine ſervice in the RUSS church.

The 25th, the ambaſſador and the whole retinue went to church.

The Emperor ſent Father FRIDELLY, accompanied by ſeveral Mandarins, with a preſent, to his Czariſh Majeſty, of ſix large boxes of tiles, made of CHINA-ware, fit for ſuch ſtoves as are uſed, in RUSSIA, for warming rooms. They were very pretty, blue and white; and, with due care, may laſt for ages.

January

January 1ſt, 1721, the Emperor's general of the artillery, together with Father FRIDELLY, and a gentleman, called STADLIN, an old GERMAN, and a watchmaker, dined at the ambaſſador's. He was, by birth, a TARTAR; and, by his converſation, it appeared he was by no means ignorant in his profeſſion, particularly with reſpect to the various compoſitions of gun-powder uſed in artificial fire-works. I asked him, how long the CHINESE had known the uſe of gun-powder? He replied, above two thouſand years, in fire-works, according to their records; but that it's application to the purpoſes of war, was only a late introduction. As the veracity and candour of this gentleman were well known, there was no room to queſtion the truth of what he advanced on this ſubject. CHAP. X. 1721.

The converſation then turned on printing. He ſaid, he could not then aſcertain, preciſely, the antiquity of this invention; but, was abſolutely certain, it was much ancienter than that of gun-powder. It is to be obſerved, that the CHINESE print with ſtamps, in the manner that cards are made in EUROPE. Indeed, the connection, between ſtamping and printing, is ſo cloſe and obvious, that, it is ſurpriſing the ingenious GREEKS

CHAP. X. and ROMANS, ſo famous for their medals, never diſco-
1721. vered the art of printing.

On this occaſion, Father FRIDELLY told me, that ſeveral of the miſſionaries, who had the good fortune to be in favour with the Emperor, had often ſolicited that prince to become CHRISTIAN, and allow himſelf to be baptized; but he always excuſed himſelf, by ſaying, he worſhipped the ſame GOD with the CHRISTIANS; and that ſuch a change of religion might occaſion ſome diſturbance in the empire, which by all means he would endeavour to prevent. However this be, it is certain, that, on CHRISTMAS day, he ſent one of his chief eunuchs to the ITALIAN convent, with orders, that prayers ſhould be offered for him; which was accordingly done, and the eunuch remained in church all the time of divine ſervice.

Next day, the ambaſſador had another private audience of the Emperor, at the palace of TZAN-SHU-YANG. The weather being very cold, the hall was warmed with ſeveral large chafing-diſhes, filled with charcoal. We ſtaid above two hours; during which time his Majeſty talked very familiarly, on various ſubjects, particularly hiſtory; wherein he diſcovered himſelf well acquainted with that of the holy ſcriptures,

as

as well as of his own country. He ſaid, that the chronology of the CHINESE was far more ancient than that of the holy ſcriptures; but obſerved, that it ended back in fabulous accounts, concerning which nothing certain could be determined. CHAP. X. 1721.

As to NOAH's flood, he affirmed, that, at or near the ſame time, there was a great deluge in CHINA, which deſtroyed all the inhabitants of the plains; but that ſuch as eſcaped to the mountains were ſaved.

He then diſcourſed of the invention of the load-ſtone, which, he ſaid, was known in CHINA above two thouſand years ago; for, it appeared from their records, that, a certain ambaſſador, from ſome diſtant iſland, to the court of CHINA, miſſing his courſe, in a ſtorm, was caſt on the CHINESE coaſt, in the utmoſt diſtreſs. The then Emperor, whoſe name I have forgot, after entertaining him hoſpitably, ſent him back to his own country. And, to prevent the like misfortunes, in his voyage homeward, gave him a compaſs to direct his courſe.

The Emperor alſo confirmed moſt of the particulars, mentioned above, concerning printing and gun-powder. It is from the holy ſcriptures, moſt part of which have been tranſlated by the miſſionaries, that the learn-

ed

CHAP. X. ed men, in CHINA, have acquired any knowledge of
1721. the weſtern ancient hiſtory. And their own records, they ſay, contain accounts of tranſactions of much greater antiquity.

At taking leave, the Emperor told the ambaſſador that he liked his converſation. He deſired to be excuſed for ſending for him in ſuch cold weather, and ſmiling ſaid, he knew the RUSSIANS were not afraid of cold.

I cannot omit taking notice of the good nature and affability of this ancient monarch, on all occaſions. Though he was now in the eightieth year of his age, and ſixtieth of his reign, he ſtill retained a ſound judgment, and ſenſes intire; and, to me, ſeemed more ſprightly than many of the Princes his ſons.

The 3d, Mr. Secretary LANGE and I dined at the FRENCH convent, where we found Signor MEZZOBARBA. I never had an opportunity of ſeeing that gentleman at our lodgings; as nothing paſſed between him and our ambaſſador, but meſſages of common civility and complement.

The 4th, I rode, from our lodgings, through the city, and went out at the north gate, at which we entered on our arrival at PEKIN. I proceeded eaſtward

to

to the end of the north wall, and then along the eaſt wall to the ſouth gate, at which I entered, and returned to our lodgings. This tour took me up about two hours and an half, at a pretty round trot; and, at the ſame rate, I reckon I could have rode quite round the city in leſs than five hours; whence a judgment may be formed of the circumference of the walls. The ſuburbs alſo are very extenſive, eſpecially to the eaſt and ſouth, and, being interſperſed with many burying places, all incloſed with brick-walls, and planted with cypreſs and other ever-greens, contribute much to beautify the neighbourhood of this great city. The CHINESE are extremely attentive to the fencing and ornamenting theſe groves, or burying places; a natural conſequence of their uncommon reſpect for their parents and relations while living, and of their extraordinary veneration for them when dead. Annually, on certain days, they reſort to theſe groves, carrying proviſions along with them, and celebrate a kind of feaſt, in commemoration of their deceaſed relations. CHAP. X. 1721.

I ſhall give an example of the filial duty of the CHINESE, in a ſtory I have often heard affirmed for true. A youth, finding his parents reduced to extreme poverty, and knowing of no means for their relief, went

and

CHAP. X. 1721. and ſold himſelf as a ſlave; and, having received the price from his maſter, immediately brought it to his aged parents. When this was ſpent, the boy had no other reſource than to run away from his maſter, and ſell himſelf again to another; and this he practiſed for ſeveral times, with the ſame view, although he knew the ſeverity of the law in ſuch caſes.

The 6th, while walking through the ſtreet, I obſerved an old beggar picking vermin from his tattered cloaths, and putting them into his mouth; a practice, which, it ſeems, is very common among this claſs of people. When a CHINESE and TARTAR are angry at one another, the TARTAR, in reproach, calls the CHINESE louſe-eater; and the latter, in return, calls the other fiſh-skin coat; becauſe the MANTZUR TARTARS, who live near the river AMOOR, ſubſiſt by fiſhing, and, in ſummer, wear coats made of the skins of fiſhes. But this habit is uſed only in ſummer; for, in winter, they wear furs.

The 7th, the Emperor ſent us a preſent of various ſorts of fine fruits, particularly ſome excellent oranges. On this occaſion, Father FRIDELLY told me, that the tree was ſtill ſtanding at CANTON, from which the ſeed was taken that the miſſionaries firſt ſent to PORTUGAL,

where

where it has proſpered ſo wonderfully; and, from the place whence it was brought, bears the name of the CHINA-orange. I doubt not, that, with due care, ſome others of the rare fruits and plants in this country, even tea itſelf, might be propagated in EUROPE, or in ſome of the AMERICAN colonies. CHAP. X. 1721.

I cannot tell whether the coffee-tree is to be found in CHINA; but am certain that none of its ſeeds are prepared and drunk there, as among the PERSIANS, TURKS, and EUROPEANS.

The 8th, the weather was much milder, the wind ſoutherly, with a ſmall mizzling rain, enough to lay the diſagreeable duſt.

Next day, ſecretary LANGE and I rode through the ſtreets, to the eaſtern convent, to viſit our friend FRIDELLY. As we paſſed, we obſerved a juggler diverting a crowd. On our coming near he played ſeveral tricks with great dexterity. He took an handful of ſmall pence, formerly mentioned, with holes in the middle of them, and laid them on a table. He then thruſt them into his noſtril, one by one, with his finger; and this he continued to perform, till the whole was exhauſted. After this, he ſuſpended an iron-chain, of round links, about four feet long. He then took a

CHAP. X. 1721. mouſe out of a box, and made it dance upon the table, quite looſe. Then the mouſe, at his order, went in at one link of the chain, and out at another, till it aſcended to the top; from whence it came down again, the contrary way, without miſſing ſo much as one ſingle ring.

The 12th, the Emperor came from TZAN-SHU-YANG, to his palace in the city.

The 13th, the maſter of the ceremonies came to invite the ambaſſador to court on the 15th, the firſt day of the new moon; and, according to the CHINESE computation, the firſt day of the new year. This is one of their higheſt feſtivals; and what added to the ſolemnity of the preſent, was its being the beginning of a new ſeculum, or ſpace of ſixty years, obſerved by the CHINESE; beſides, the Emperor had reigned all the laſt ſeculum, and was now going to enter on the ſecond. On this occaſion were to be aſſembled ſeveral TARTAR princes; particularly, the Kutuchtu and the Tuſh-du-Chan, together with many perſons of diſtinction from KOREA, and all the dominions of CHINA. This feaſt begins on the firſt day, and continues during the increaſe of the moon.

The 15th, we went early to court; and found moſt of

of the grandees aſſembled in the court-yard, ſitting on their cuſhions, and a few of them in the great hall. We entered the court at the great gates, which are ſeldom opened, except on ſuch extraordinary occaſions. The Emperor ſoon came, and ſeated himſelf upon his throne, which was more magnificent than that at TZAN-SHU-YANG; but, like it, plain and unornamented. His Majeſty was dreſſed in the ſame manner as at our firſt audience. We were placed, within the hall, on the right of the throne; and Signior MEZZOBARBA, with the miſſionaries, at no great diſtance from us. In the mean time, all the people of diſtinction, who came from diſtant places, made their nine bows, to the ground, without the hall. And, as there was not room in the hall to contain one half of the company, many of them remained in the court during the whole time of the audience. Our entertainment was almoſt the ſame as at our firſt audience; which, therefore, I ſhall not deſcribe. CHAP. X. 1721.

The Emperor was very chearful, and ſent for ſeveral of his old acquaintance to ſpeak with him. The Tuſh-du-Chan and ſome other TARTAR princes were placed on the left of the throne, with the Emperor's ſons and grandſons. In a word, this aſſembly ex-

CHAP. X. 1721. ceeded, in number and quality, any thing of the kind I ever ſaw. I was in hopes to have ſeen the Kutuchtu on this occaſion; but was informed that the Emperor, who ſhows great reſpect to this venerable prieſt, detained him in his private apartments.

This palace occupies a large ſpace of ground, encompaſſed with an high brick-wall. There are ſeveral ſtreets for ſervants and officers of the houſhold. Many of the houſes are high, and covered with yellow varniſhed tiles, which appear like gold in the ſun. Northward from the palace is a large canal, of an irregular figure, where the imperial family divert themſelves by fiſhing. This canal is artificial; and the earth dug out of it has raiſed an high bank, from whence you have a full view of the city, and the country adjacent, to a conſiderable diſtance. This mount riſes to a ridge, which is planted with trees; reſembling the wild and irregular ſcenes of nature that frequently preſent themſelves in this country. The canal and mount are of an equal length, which I compute to be about an ENGLISH mile. This muſt have been a work of vaſt expence and labour; and, it muſt be confeſſed, contributes greatly to the beauty of the place.

The 16th was ſpent in receiving viſits of compli-

ment,

ment, from the miniſters and officers of the court, on occaſion of the new year. CHAP. X. 1721.

Next day, the viſits were returned by Mr. ſecretary LANGE and GLAZUNOFF, in name of the ambaſſador.

The 18th, ſome of the retinue, accompanied with a CHINESE friend, went to a great market, held in the ſuburbs, about a mile without the city to the ſouth-weſt. Here we found a number of toys, and things of value, both new and ſecond-hand, expoſed to ſale in the open ſtreet.

Near this place ſtood a magnificent temple, the doors of which being open, we walked into it; and ſaw, ſtanding at the ſouth end, a monſtrous image, about twenty-five feet high, carved and gilt, having twelve arms and hands, a frightful viſage, and great goggling eyes. By the touch it ſeemed to be made of a kind of plaiſter. This image is called Fo, which ſignifies God in the CHINESE language. Whilſt we walked about in the temple, many people entered, who kneeled and bowed ſeveral times to the image; after which they retired, without taking notice of us, or of any body elſe. In all the leſſer temples, I had formerly ſeen, I found a great number of images of inferior deities, or repu-

ted

CHAP. X. 1721. ted ſaints; but this was occupied by Fo only, without any rival.

From the temple we went to a publick tea-houſe, where we ſaw many people drinking tea and ſmoking tobacco; from thence to a tavern, where we dined; and, in the evening, returned to the city.

Next day, I was preſent at the repreſentation of a kind of farce, in the publick ſtreet, not far from our lodgings. There were about twenty ſtrollers aſſembled on this occaſion, who entertained the crowd with many legerdemain tricks, and unnatural geſtures. The ſtage was covered with ſilk-ſtuff of various colours.

During the feſtival there are many ſuch ſtage-plays performed in all the publick ſtreets. You alſo find often high croſſes erected, on which are hoiſted a number of pendents and ſtreamers of party-coloured ſilks, that make a pretty appearance. At this ſeaſon all the ſhops are ſhut; almoſt no buſineſs is done; and the people go about, dreſſed in their beſt cloaths, as on holidays in EUROPE.

The 20th, the ambaſſador and all the gentlemen of the retinue were invited to dine, at a publick houſe in the city, by a young CHINESE gentleman. And all of us accepted the invitation, except the ambaſſador. Our friend

friend was ſo polite as to ſend chairs for his gueſts, about ten of the clock; and, at eleven, we reached the houſe, which was the largeſt of that ſort I ever ſaw; and could eaſily contain ſix or eight hundred people. The roof was ſupported by two rows of wooden pillars. This tavern conſiſted only of one apartment, great part of which was filled with long tables, having benches, on each ſide, for the accommodation of the company. During the time of dinner we were entertained with muſick; and, after it, by a company of players, maintained by the houſe, who daily act plays on a ſtage erected at one ſide of the room. None but people of faſhion come to this place. CHAP. X. 1721.

When a perſon intends to treat his friends at one of theſe houſes, he ſends previous notice of his deſign, with a note of the company, and the ſum to be laid out on each of them; agreeably to theſe orders, things are executed with the greateſt punctuality. The expence on each of our company could not be leſs than three or four ounces of ſilver, as we ſtaid the whole day, and had a ſplendid entertainment, conſiſting of many courſes and deſerts, prepared and ſerved in the beſt faſhion of the country. I cannot but obſerve, on this occaſion alſo, the order and dexterity with which

CHAP. X. 1721. the ſervants performed their parts in ſuch a numerous aſſembly. I ſhall not pretend to give any account of the play; only, that the company ſeemed highly pleaſed; and the performers conſiſted of both men and women, well dreſſed, and of decent behaviour.

At ſeveral tables the people were employed in gaming; ſome playing at cards, others at dice and draughts. I ſaw no money among them; though I was informed ſome of the CHINESE play very high. In the evening, we took leave of our hoſpitable friend, and returned to our lodgings.

The day following, Father PARANIM ſent us a preſent of a large ſturgeon, and ſome other freſh fiſh, brought from the river AMOOR. Theſe can only be carried, to ſuch a diſtance, in the coldeſt ſeaſon; when they are preſerved freſh, by being kept frozen among the ſnow. This method is practiſed, with ſucceſs, in northern countries; for, provided the fiſh is immediately expoſed to the froſt, after being caught, it may be carried, in ſnow, for many miles, almoſt as freſh as when taken out of the water.

The 22d, I went along with our new CHINESE friend, named SIASIEY, to ſee a manufactory of CHINA-ware, ſtanding on the bank of the river YU, about twelve ENGLISH

GLISH miles eaſtward of the city. After arriving at the place, we paſſed through ſeveral ſhades and houſes, where I ſaw a number of people at work. The ovens, in particular, ſeemed very curious. But my view was ſo curſory and ſuperficial, that I could form no judgment of the materials, or manner of making theſe cleanly and beautiful veſſels, which ſtill remain unrivalled by the ſimilar productions of any other nation. I inquired into the truth of the opinion which the EUROPEANS entertain, "that the clay muſt ly a century, "to digeſt, before it is fit for uſe;" and was told, by a maſter workman, that a few months preparation was ſufficient. So far as I could obſerve, they made no ſecret, at this place, of what they were employed about. I was, however, told, that, to the ſouth, the CHINESE are more cautious, and carefully conceal their art from ſtrangers. One thing I firmly believe, that, although the EUROPEANS underſtood the art of making porcelain, the CHINESE would underſell them at every market in the world. This valuable manufacture is carried on in moſt of the towns in CHINA; and, as it is ſold but a little above the rate of common earthen-ware in EUROPE, the materials of which it is compoſed can neither be rare nor coſtly. This important branch of

CHAP. X. 1721.

CHAP. X. 1721. trade brings an immenſe treaſure into the country, and affords employment to vaſt numbers of poor, who, otherwiſe, would be uſeleſs and burdenſome to the publick. Beſides china, they alſo make a kind of delf, or earthen-ware, for the uſe of the lower claſs of people.

Next day, I happened to meet two gentlemen from the peninſula of KOREA. Their phyſiognomies were nearly the ſame with thoſe of the CHINESE; but their dreſs different. What ſurpriſed me moſt was, that they were as ignorant of the ſpoken CHINESE language as I was, and delivered themſelves by an interpreter. When they have any thing material to communicate they put it in writing, which is eaſily underſtood by the CHINESE. They write in the ſame manner as the CHINESE, from the top of the page, in ſtraight lines, to the bottom, and with a pencil, like thoſe commonly uſed by painters.

KOREA is a fine country, ſubject to CHINA, ſituated betwixt the long wall and the river AMOOR; and runs out into a point, towards the iſland of JAPAN, and the EASTERN ocean. The country is very plentiful, and abounds with corn and cattle.

CHAP.

CHAPTER XI.

Occurrences at PEKIN *continued; the feſtival held at court on the new year, &c.*

THE 24th, the maſter of the ceremonies came to invite the ambaſſador to the feſtival of the new year, which is always when the moon is at the full, to be held, at the imperial palace of TZANG-SHU-YANG, on the 29th.

In the mean time, the cold continued very piercing; ſo that I ſaw horſes, with loaded carriages, croſs the ditches, without the walls of the city, upon the ice.

The 29th, chairs were ſent from court to carry the ambaſſador, and gentlemen of the retinue; we arrived there in the evening, and lodged in a houſe near the palace. Near our lodgings was a pretty garden, with a canal, on which was a ſmall pleaſure-boat. In the middle of the canal, was raiſed an artificial mount, planted with ſome barren trees, in imitation of nature. We aſcended, by a winding path, to the top of the mount, from whence we had a fine view of all the country around.

The 30th, being the firſt day of the feſtival, we

CHAP. XI. went to court. We were met at the gate by the ma-
1721. ſter of the ceremonies, who conducted us to the bottom of the ſtairs of the great hall, where we took our places, in the open court yard, among a numerous aſſembly of grandees, whom we found ſitting croſs-legged on their cuſhions. After waiting about a quarter of an hour, his Majeſty appeared, and ſeated himſelf upon the throne; upon which all the company ſtood. The CHINESE made their bows, as is uſual on ſuch occaſions; but we were permitted to make our compliments in our own faſhion. It ſeemed ſomewhat ſtrange to a BRITON, to ſee ſome thouſands of people upon their knees, and bowing their heads to the ground, in moſt humble poſture, to a mortal like themſelves.

We were immediately brought into the hall; and the ambaſſador was conducted to the throne, in order to congratulate his Imperial Majeſty on the anniverſary of the new year. Our ſtation, on this occaſion, as at the firſt audience, was to the right of the throne. All the princes, the Emperor's ſons and grandſons, together with the Tuſh-du-chan, and ſome other perſons of high diſtinction, were placed to the left, oppoſite to us. As the cuſtoms of the CHINESE are, in many inſtances, quite contrary to thoſe of the EUROPEANS; ſo,

I have been informed, that, among them, the left hand is the place of greateſt honour. After we had drunk a diſh of tea, the Emperor beckoned to the ambaſſador to come to him again; and inquired into the cuſtoms and ceremonies, at the courts of EUROPE, on feſtivals of this nature; adding, at the ſame time, "he "had been informed, that, after drinking the king's "health, on ſuch occaſions, the EUROPEANS broke the "glaſſes. He approved, he ſaid, of the drinking-part; "but did not comprehend the meaning of breaking "the glaſſes;" and laughed heartily at the joke. CHAP. XI. 1721.

The great hall was, by this time, almoſt full of company; and a number of people of diſtinction ſtill remained in the area, who could not find room in the hall.

The entertainment now began to be ſerved up. The victuals were carried about in great order; and placed, before the company, on large tables. All the diſhes were cold, except thoſe ſet before his Majeſty; who ſupplied us plentifully with hot proviſions, from the throne.

Dinner being ended, the ſports were begun by a company of wreſtlers, compoſed of CHINESE and TARTARS. Many of them were almoſt naked, having no

cloaths,

CHAP. XI. cloaths but tight canvaſs drawers. They performed
1721. their parts in the area before the hall. When any of them was ſeverely bruiſed by his antagoniſt, or much hurt by a fall, which frequently happened, the Emperor ſent him a cordial, and ordered him to be properly taken care of. Sometimes alſo, when he perceived the combatants too eager and warm, a ſign was given to part them. Theſe inſtances of humanity were very amiable in the old monarch, and rendered the ſight of ſuch ſhocking ſpectacles more tolerable; for many of theſe wreſtlers received ſuch blows and falls, as were ſufficient to have knocked the breath out of their bodies.

To the wreſtling ſucceeded many other games, and mock-fights; in which, the performers, armed, ſome with lances, others with battle-axes, quarter-ſtaffs, flails, or cudgels, acted their parts with great dexterity.

Then appeared two troops of TARTARS, clothed in coats of tiger-skins, armed with bows and arrows, and mounted on hobby-horſes. At firſt, they behaved as enemies; but, after ſome skirmiſhes with their arrows, the parties were reconciled, and began a dance to a diſmal tune of vocal and inſtrumental muſick. The dance was interrupted by a perſon in a frightful mask, of a tall ſtature, dreſſed and mounted like the TARTARS,

who,

who, they ſaid, repreſented the devil. After making ſeveral unſucceſsful attacks, on the united body of the TARTARS, this formidable hero was at length killed by an arrow, and carried off in triumph. During the dance, each TARTAR had a ſmall basket in one hand, and an arrow in the other, wherewith they ſcraped on the basket, keeping time to the muſick. This ſcraping ſounded a little harſh to an ITALIAN ear; for I could obſerve Signor MEZZOBARBA, and his retinue, ſmiling at the performance. CHAP. XI. 1721.

While the TARTARS performed in the court, one of the Emperor's ſons, a Prince of about twenty years of age, danced alone in the hall, and attracted the eyes of the whole company. His motions were, at firſt, very ſlow, ſo that he ſeemed ſcarcely to move at all; but, afterwards, became more brisk and lively. The Emperor was chearful, and ſeemed well pleaſed with the different performers; but particularly with an old TARTAR, who played on a chime of little bells, with two ſhort ivory rods. The inſtruments of muſick were very various, and all tuned to the CHINESE taſte. The Emperor told the ambaſſador, that he knew well their muſick would not pleaſe an EUROPEAN ear; but that every nation liked their own beſt.

The

CHAP. XI. 1721. The dancing being over, there was hoiſted up a large veſſel, reſembling a tub, between two poſts erected in the area for that purpoſe. In the veſſel were placed three boys, who performed many dexterous tricks, both in the veſſel and on the poſts, too tedious to mention. By this time the ſun was ſet, and the company were ſoon after diſmiſſed for the night.

Next day, the rejoicings were renewed. We did not, however, go to court before the evening; becauſe the fire-works would not begin till the ſun was ſet. On our arrival, we were conducted through a garden, weſtward from the palace, in the middle of which ſtood a large building, with covered galleries all around. Before the houſe was a canal, having over it a draw-bridge. We took our places on the gravel-walk, juſt under the gallery, where the Emperor ſat with his wives and family. Hard by us was the Kutuchtu, in his tent, having one of his lamas ſtanding at the door. This prieſt never once appeared out of his tent, during the whole ſhow. All the grandees and officers of ſtate were ſeated on their cuſhions, along the bank of the canal. The machinery, for the fire-works, was placed on the other ſide of the canal; and nobody was permit-

permitted to go thither, except the people who ma- CHAP. XI.
naged it. 1721.

About five of the clock a ſignal was given, for beginning to play off the fire-works, by a rocket let fly from the gallery where the Emperor ſat; and, in the ſpace of a few minutes, many thouſand lanterns were lighted. Theſe lanterns were made of paper of different colours, red, blue, green, and yellow; and hung on poſts about ſix feet high, ſcattered over all the garden; which exhibited a very pleaſant proſpect to the eye.

Another ſignal was then given, for playing off the rockets. They ſprung upwards to a prodigious height, and fell down in figures of ſtars, diſplaying a great variety of beautiful colours. The rockets were accompanied with what I ſhall call crackers, for want of a more proper name. Their exploſion reſembled the reports of many great guns, fired at certain intervals, and exhibited a view of many charming colours, and forms of fire. Theſe, with a few fire-works of different kinds, intermixed, continued for the ſpace of three hours.

Oppoſite to the gallery where the Emperor ſat, was ſuſpended a large round veſſel, about twenty feet in diameter, between two poſts about thirty feet high.

CHAP. XI. 1721. A rocket ſent from the gallery lighted a match, hanging from the veſſel, which immediately cauſed the bottom of it to drop down with a loud noiſe. Then fell out a lettice, or grate-work, all on fire, and hung between the veſſel and the ground, burning furiouſly, in various colours. This continued for ten minutes, and really exhibited a moſt curious ſight. It ſeems, this lettice-work was compoſed of materials that immediately kindled, on being expoſed to the air; for no perſon was ſeen near the machine.

The grate-work being extinguiſhed, there appeared a lighted match, hanging from the middle of the veſſel, and burning up to it. As ſoon as the fire reached the veſſel, thirty fair paper-lanterns, of various colours, dropped from it; and hung, in a ſtraight line, below one another, between it and the ground; which immediately catched fire of themſelves, and formed a beautiful and well-proportioned column of parti-coloured light. After this, fell out about ten or twelve pillars of the ſame form, but of a leſſer ſize; theſe alſo took fire as ſoon as they dropped. This ſcene continued till the number of one thouſand lanterns fell from the veſſel, which diminiſhed, every time, till the

laſt

laſt were very ſmall. I muſt confeſs this preſented a delightful object to the ſpectators. CHAP. XI. 1721.

I could not help being ſurprized at the ingenuity of the artiſt, in crowding ſuch a number of lanterns into ſo ſmall and ſimple a machine as this ſeemed to be; and, at the ſame time, with ſo much order, that all of them dropped and kindled of themſelves, with equal regularity, as if he had let them fall from his hand; for not even one of them was extinguiſhed by accident, or in the leaſt entangled by another. This concluded the firſt day's entertainment.

The 31ſt, in the evening, we returned to court; where was opened a new ſcene of fire-works, which continued, with great variety, till ten o'clock at night.

The 1ſt of February, we went again to court; where the fire-works were reſumed in many different, well-executed, deſigns. What pleaſed me moſt, was a ſmall mount, raiſed in the middle of the garden, from which ſprung a ſtream of white and blue fire, in imitation of water. The top of the mount contained a cavity, in ſhape of a large urn, from which the fire roſe to a prodigious height.

Oppoſite to the gallery, where the Emperor ſat, were erected three large frames, about thirty feet high

CHAP. XI. 1721. each. On one was a monſtrous figure of a dragon; on the ſecond, a man on horſeback; and the third repreſented an elephant, with a human figure on his back. All theſe were compoſed of a deep blue fire; and were interwoven with vines and grapes, hanging about on all ſides, of white, red, and blue fire.

Beſides theſe, there were exhibited, on this occaſion, many other ingenious deſigns of fire-works; which far ſurpaſſed any thing of the kind, I ever ſaw, though I have been preſent at performances of this nature, exhibited, at ST. PETERSBURG, by the beſt artiſts in EUROPE. Beſides the art diſplayed in the contrivance and figure, theſe works furniſhed, in particular, a wonderful variety of moſt beautiful colours, far exceeding my ability to deſcribe. I muſt confeſs, they far out-did my expectations, and even common fame, which ſeldom leſſens things of this nature.

The following day, the Emperor gave the ambaſſador a private audience, and inquired how he liked the diverſions and fire-works. On this occaſion, the Emperor repeated what has been already obſerved concerning the antiquity of illuminations compoſed of gun-powder; and added, that, although fire-works had been known in CHINA for more than two thouſand

years,

years, he himſelf had made many improvements upon them, and brought them to their preſent perfection. CHAP. XI. 1721.

The 3d, we returned to the city, in a cold froſty day, and the wind at north-weſt. We found the rejoicings ſtill going on at PEKIN; for ſtages were erected, and plays repreſented, in all the principal ſtreets through which we paſſed.

The affairs relating to the embaſſy being nearly finiſhed, we began now to prepare for our journey to the weſtward; which was to take place as ſoon as the extremity of the cold was abated.

The 9th, three miſſionaries, PARANIM, DEMAIL, and MORAN, came to pay their reſpects to the ambaſſador, and beg the favour of him, that Signior NICOLAI, one of their ſociety, might be permitted to accompany him in his journey to EUROPE; which was granted, provided it was agreeable to the Emperor. The reaſon of this requeſt was ſuppoſed to be, that, Signior MEZZOBARBA having returned to ROME, without accompliſhing the ends of his embaſſy; the Emperor, who favoured the cauſe of the JESUITS, had concerted with them, to ſend NICOLAI to the court of ROME, in order to repreſent the ſtate of this affair, before MEZZOBARBA could arrive.

Next

CHAP. XI. 1721. Next day, the Emperor ſent three officers with preſents to his Czariſh Majeſty; the chief of which were, tapiſtry for two rooms, neatly wrought on a rich ſilk-ſtuff; a ſet of ſmall enamelled gold cups; ſome japanned cups, ſet with mother of pearl; three flower-pieces, curiouſly embroidered on taffety; two cheſts of rockets, prepared in the CHINESE faſhion; about twenty or thirty pieces of ſilk, in moſt of which was interwoven the dragon with five claws; a parcel of different ſorts of curious fans for ladies; alſo, a box containing ſome rolls of white CHINESE paper, the ſheets of which were of a ſize much larger than common; beſides ſeveral other toys, ſcarce worth mentioning. From theſe particulars it appears, that theſe two mighty monarchs were not very laviſh in their preſents to each other; preferring curioſities to things of real value.

The 11th, ſeveral officers came, from court, with preſents to the ambaſſador, and every perſon of the retinue, correſponding to their different ſtations and characters; and, ſo minutely and exactly was this matter managed, that even the meaneſt of our ſervants was not neglected. The preſents, conſiſting of a complete CHINESE dreſs, ſome pieces of damasks, and other ſtuffs, were, indeed, of no great value. They were, how-

however, carried along the ſtreets, wrapped up in yellow ſilk, with the uſual parade of things belonging to the court; a circumſtance which is reckoned one of the greateſt honours that can be conferred on a foreign miniſter. CHAP. XI. 1721.

Next day, the Emperor ſent to ask the ambaſſador, whether he inclined to accompany him to a hunting-match, in a foreſt not far diſtant from PEKIN; to which his excellency readily agreed.

The 13th, I dined with one of my CHINESE friends, called FANGFUNG. In going thither, I met, in the ſtreet, two men riding upon aſſes, with their ſervants leading them by the bridle. I ſoon perceived they were KAWLEES; which is the name given, by the CHINESE and TARTARS, to the people of KOREA; whom I have mentioned above.

The 14th, the weather was very fine and warm.

The 15th, we went to a fair in the ſuburbs, which is held the firſt day of every new moon, where we found many things expoſed to ſale, not commonly found in ſhops.

The 16th, the weather being favourable, I took a ride round the walls of the city; which I performed, at an eaſy trot, in the ſpace of four hours; whereby the

CHAP. XI. the compaſs of PEKIN may be nearly computed. The
1721. ſuburbs, eſpecially to the eaſt and ſouth, are very extenſive; and, in many places of them, the buildings are equal to thoſe within the walls.

The 17th, being now on the point of our departure, in order to make the moſt of the ſhort time we had to ſtay, I rode about twelve miles eaſtward from PEKIN, accompanied with a CHINESE friend, to the banks of the river; which I found crowded with a number of barques, of different ſizes, which are conſtantly employed in carrying proviſions, and other ſtores, to the city, from diſtant parts of the country. I ſaw many veſſels ſailing down the ſtream, towards the ſouth-eaſt. And I was informed, there are nine thouſand nine hundred and ninty nine veſſels conſtantly employed on this river; but why confined to ſuch an odd number I could neither learn, nor comprehend. During a month, or ſix weeks, in winter, this river is frozen over; at which ſeaſon, proviſions are conveyed by land-carriage, or along the ice.

On this occaſion alſo I reviſited the CHINA-manufactory, in order to try whether I could learn any thing of that curious art. But, though the people were very complaiſant, and ſhowed me every thing I deſired them,

them, I returned as ignorant as I went thither; and, I am perſuaded, that, before a perſon can get any knowledge of the affair, he muſt be bred a potter, and have time to inſpect its whole progreſs; of which theſe people ſeem to make no ſecret. CHAP. XI. 1721.

The fields, along the banks of the river, are well cultivated; producing fine wheat, and other ſorts of grain. I ſaw alſo great plantations of tobacco, which they call tharr, and which yields very conſiderable profits; as it is univerſally uſed in ſmoking, by perſons of all ranks, of both ſexes, in CHINA; and, beſides, great quantities are ſent to the MONGALLS, who prefer the CHINESE manner of preparing it before every other. They make it into a groſs powder, like ſaw duſt, which they keep in a ſmall bag, and fill their little braſs-pipes out of it, without touching the tobacco with their fingers. The ſmoke is very mild, and has quite a different ſmell from ours. It is reported the CHINESE have had the uſe of tobacco for many ages.

I obſerved, that, in cold weather, the CHINESE chewed a kind of nut, about the bigneſs of a nutmeg, which they called beetle; it is of an aſtringent quality. They ſay, it both keeps them warm and cleans their teeth.

Next day was ſpent in preparing for our journey.

CHAP. XI. 1721. On the 18th, all our gentlemen dined with my CHINESE friend, named SIASIEY, where we met with a friendly reception, and a ſumptuous feaſt. After dinner, our hoſpitable landlord put about his cups very freely. At laſt, he took me by the hand, and deſired I would let the ambaſſador return and remain with him; and he would give me my choice of which of his wives or daughters I liked beſt. I could not but return my friend hearty thanks for his obliging offer; which, however, I thought it not proper to accept.

Next day, I went to ſee the market where proviſions were ſold. It was a ſpacious oblong, ſpread with gravel, very neat and clean. The butchers had their ſhops in a ſhade, running quite round the place. I ſaw little beef, but a great deal of mutton. In the middle, was great ſtore of poultry, wild-fowl, and veniſon; but, what ſurpriſed me not a little, was, to find about a dozen of dead badgers expoſed to ſale. The CHINESE, it ſeems, are very fond of theſe animals; which are accounted unclean in other parts of the world. All the CHINESE merchants have the art of expoſing their goods to ſale dreſſed up in the moſt advantageous manner; and, even in purchaſing any trifling thing, whatever the caſe be

that

that holds it, it is half the coſt, and often exceeds it in value. CHAP. XI. 1721.

The 21ſt, being the day appointed for hunting with the Emperor, at one of the clock in the morning, horſes were brought to our lodgings, for the ambaſſador and thoſe who attended him. We immediately mounted, and, after riding about ſix miles, to the ſouth-weſt of the city, at break of day, we reached the gates of the park called CHAYZA; where we were received by an officer, and conducted, through the foreſt, to a ſummer-houſe, about a mile from the gate, in which the Emperor had ſlept the preceding night. This was a ſmall but neat building, having a double row of galleries, open to the foreſt, on all ſides, and an avenue leading to it from the gate, planted with ſeveral rows of trees. At ſome diſtance from the houſe, we diſmounted, and were met by the maſter of the ceremonies, who conducted us into a gallery. As ſoon as we entered, the good old Emperor, who had riſen long before our arrival, ſent one of his eunuchs to ſalute the ambaſſador, and ordered us tea and other victuals. On the ſouth ſide of the houſe is a canal, filled with clear water, and ſeveral large fiſh-ponds, which make a great addition to the beauties of this charming place.

CHAP. XI. 1721. At a convenient diſtance from the houſe, ſtood about a thouſand tents, where the courtiers and grandees had lodged the night before. Breakfaſt being over, the Emperor, who was very fond of arms, ſent to deſire a ſight of the ambaſſador's fowling-piece. He returned it, with ſeveral of his own to be ſhown us. They had all match-locks. The CHINESE are poſſeſſed with a notion, that flints, in their climate, acquire a moiſture which hinders their firing. But, as far as I could perceive, the air had little effect upon our flints.

A ſignal was then given that the Emperor was coming; upon which all the great men drew up in lines, from the bottom of the ſtairs to the road leading to the foreſt, all on foot, dreſſed in their hunting habits, the ſame with thoſe uſed by the officers and cavalry of the army, when in the field, and armed with bows and arrows. We had a proper place aſſigned us, and made our bows to his Majeſty, who returned a gracious ſmile, with ſigns to follow him. He was ſeated, croſs-legged, in an open machine, carried by four men, with long poles reſted on their ſhoulders. Before him lay a fowling-piece, a bow, and ſheaf of arrows. This has been his hunting equipage for ſome years, ſince he left off riding; but, in his youth, he went uſual-

ly

ly, every ſummer, ſeveral days-journey without the long wall, and carried along with him all the Princes his ſons, and many perſons of diſtinction, to the number frequently of ſome thouſands, in order to hunt in the woods and deſerts; where he continued for the ſpace of two or three months. Their proviſions were reſtricted to bare neceſſaries, and often to what they caught in the woods of TARTARY. This piece of policy he practiſed chiefly with a view to harden the officers of his army, and prevent their falling into idleneſs and effeminacy among the CHINESE; and, at the ſame time, to ſet a good example of the auſterities he recommended, by living on the ſame hard fare he preſcribed to others. CHAP. XI. 1721.

As ſoon as the Emperor had paſſed, the company mounted and followed him, at ſome diſtance, till we came into the open foreſt, where all formed into a ſemicircle, in the centre of which was the Emperor, having on his left hand about eight or ten of his ſons and grandſons, and the ambaſſador on his right, about fifty paces diſtant; cloſe by him, were the maſter of the chace, with ſome grey-hounds, and the grand falconer with his hawks. I could not but admire the beauty of theſe fine birds. Many of them were as white

CHAP. XI. white as doves; having one or two black feathers in
1721. their wings or tails. They are brought from SIBERIA, or places to the north of the river AMOOR.

Our wings being extended, there were many hares ſtarted, which the company endeavoured to drive towards the Emperor, who killed many of them with arrows as they paſſed; thoſe he miſſed, he made a ſign to ſome of the Princes to purſue, who alſo killed ſeveral of them with arrows; but no other perſon was permitted to draw a bow, or ſtir from the line. The ſame rules of hunting, I formerly obſerved, are practiſed by the MONGALLS.

From the open field, we continued our route weſtward, to a place among thickets and tall reeds, where we ſprung a number of pheaſants, partridges, and quails. His Majeſty then laid aſide his bow and arrows, and carried a hawk on his hand; which he flew as occaſion offered. The hawks generally raked in the pheaſants while flying; but, if they took the reeds or buſhes, they ſoon caught them.

After proceeding about two or three miles farther into the foreſt, we came to a tall wood, where we found ſeveral ſorts of deer. The young men went in and beat the woods, whilſt the reſt of the company remain-

ed

ed without. We ſaw much game paſs us; but nobody drew a bow, till the Emperor had killed a ſtag, which he did very dexterouſly, with a broad-headed arrow; after which the Princes had leave to kill ſeveral bucks; among which was one of that ſpecies, that bears the muſk, called *kaberda* in SIBERIA, of which I have formerly given a deſcription. The CHINESE muſk is ſtronger, and therefore preferable to that from northern parts. CHAP. XI. 1721.

We had now been ſix hours on horſe-back, and, I reckon, had travelled about fifteen ENGLISH miles; but no end of the foreſt yet appeared. We turned ſhort from this wood ſouthwards, till, coming to ſome marſhes, overgrown with tall reeds, we rouſed a great many wild boars; but, as it was not the ſeaſon for killing them, they all eſcaped. The hunting theſe fierce animals is reckoned the moſt dangerous of all kinds of ſport, except the chace of lions and tigers. Every one endeavoured to avoid them, and ſeveral of them run furiouſly through the thickeſt troops of horſe. The Emperor was ſo cautious as to have a company of men, armed with lances, to guard his machine.

We continued the ſport till about four o'clock, when we came to a high artificial mount, of a ſquare figure,

CHAP. XI. 1721. figure, raiſed in the middle of a plain, on the top of which were pitched about ten or twelve tents, for the imperial family. This mount had ſeveral winding paths leading to the top, planted, on each ſide, with rows of trees, in imitation of nature. To the ſouth was a large baſon of water, with a boat upon it; from whence, I ſuppoſe, the earth has been taken that formed this mount. At ſome diſtance from the mount, tents were erected for the people of diſtinction, and officers of the court. About two hundred yards from it, we were lodged in ſome clean huts, covered with reeds. The Emperor, from his ſituation, had a view of all the tents, and a great way farther into the foreſt. The whole ſcene made a very pretty appearance.

As ſoon as we alighted, the maſter of the ceremonies was ſent, by the Emperor, to ask the ambaſſador how he liked their manner of hunting. He made a ſuitable return, acknowledging, at the ſame time, the great honour done him on this occaſion.

The Emperor then ſent us great plenty of dreſſed proviſions of all kinds; and the officer, who brought them, pointed out ſeveral diſhes, which his Majeſty ſent from his own table, conſiſting of mutton, veniſon, pheaſants, and other ſorts of wild fowl.

After

After dinner, the Emperor ſent two of his chief eu- CHAP. XI.
nuchs to compliment the ambaſſador; and inform 1721.
him, that he intended to entertain him with the baiting of three tigers, which had been kept ſome time, cooped up in a ſtrong grate-work, for that purpoſe. The hill, where the Emperor's tent ſtood, was ſurrounded with ſeveral ranks of guards, armed with long ſpears. A guard, alſo, was placed before the ambaſſador's, and the reſt of the tents, to ſecure the whole encampment from the fury of theſe fierce animals. The firſt was let out by a perſon mounted on a fleet horſe, who opened the door of the coop by means of a rope tied to it. The tiger immediately left his cage, and ſeemed much pleaſed to find himſelf at liberty. The horſeman rode off at full ſpeed; while the tiger was rolling himſelf upon the graſs. At laſt he roſe, and growled, and walked about. The Emperor fired twice at him with bullets; but, the diſtance being conſiderable, miſſed him, though the pieces were well pointed. Upon which his Majeſty ſent to the ambaſſador, to try his piece upon him; which being charged with a ſingle ball, he walked towards the animal, accompanied by ten men, armed with ſpears, in

CHAP. XI. 1721. caſe of accidents; till, being at a convenient diſtance, he took his aim, and killed him on the ſpot.

The ſecond was let out in the ſame manner. The horſeman, retiring a little, left the creature rolling upon the graſs, like the firſt. He then returned, and ſhot at him with a blunted arrow; which rouſed the animal to ſuch a pitch, and made him purſue ſo cloſely, that the horſeman narrowly eſcaped within the ranks, where the furious tiger, endeavouring to leap over the men's heads, was killed at the foot of the mount.

The third, as ſoon as he was ſet at liberty, run directly towards the Emperor's tent; and was, in like manner, killed with the ſpears. A man muſt be well mounted and armed, who hunts this kind of animals in the woods; where they muſt be much ſtronger and ſwifter than theſe we ſaw, which had been confined for many months, and whoſe limbs, by want of exerciſe, were become ſtiff and unwieldy; but, notwithſtanding this diſadvantage, the courage and nimbleneſs even of theſe animals was very ſurpriſing. I have ſeen four ſorts of them, the tiger, panther, leopard, and lynx, which are all very fierce; but the firſt is the largeſt and ſtrongeſt.

The Emperor, in his youth, was very fond of hunting theſe creatures in the woods of TARTARY; but,

now,

now, he confines himſelf within the limits of the fo- CHAP. XI.
reſt, where there is game ſufficient to gratify any 1721.
ſportſman.

The killing of the tigers finiſhed the diverſion of the day; after which we retired to our huts, where we were entertained with a plentiful ſupper, ſent us by the Emperor. After ſupper, an officer was ſent from his Majeſty to the ambaſſador, who brought the tiger's skin he had ſhot; telling him, that, by the laws of hunting, he had a right to it.

Next morning, the ſport was reſumed, and varied little from that of the preceding day. About three o'clock, afternoon, we came to another ſummer-houſe, in the middle of the foreſt, where the Emperor lodged the following night; while we lay in a ſmall neat temple in the neighbourhood; and were entertained, by his Majeſty, in the ſame manner as before.

The 23d, about eight of the clock in the morning, the maſter of the ceremonies waited on the ambaſſador, in order to conduct him into his Majeſty's preſence, to receive his audience of leave. The Emperor received him, in a moſt friendly manner, in his bed-chamber. He repeated his aſſurances of the great friendſhip he entertained for his Czariſh Majeſty; and

CHAP. XI. 1721. expreſſed great reſpect for the perſonal merit of the ambaſſador. After which the ambaſſador took leave; and we returned to our lodgings in the city.

I ſhall only obſerve further, that this foreſt is really a moſt delightful place; is well ſtored with variety of game; and is of great extent, as will eaſily be conceived from the account I have given of our two days hunting. It is all incloſed with a high wall of brick. The value of this park, ſo near the capital, ſhows the magnificence of this powerful monarch.

The 24th, the ambaſſador was invited, by the preſident of the college of mathematicks, to ſee the obſervatory; which is ſituated immediately within the eaſt wall, and commands an extenſive proſpect. The building is not magnificent; but is furniſhed with a fine armillary ſphere, globes, teleſcopes, an orrery in good order, and other mathematical inſtruments of the beſt EUROPEAN workmanſhip. This college was erected by the preſent Emperor, who ſpares no coſt to bring it to perfection; and the meaneſt of his ſubjects, who diſcover a genius for ſcience, or any uſeful art, are ſure to meet with due encouragement.

The CHINESE are indebted to the preſent Emperor for what progreſs they have made in aſtronomy. He chiefly

chiefly promoted this ſtudy by countenancing the JESUITS and other miſſionaries; for I have been informed, that, before their arrival in this country, the inhabitants could ſcarcely calculate an eclipſe. The CHINESE, it is indeed pretended, underſtood aſtronomy previous to that period; but the knowledge of it was in a great meaſure loſt, during the many fatal revolutions of the empire. CHAP. XI. 1721.

From the obſervatory we aſcended, by a broad riſing paſſage, to the top of the city-wall; where we ſaw about fifteen horſemen riding their rounds; which, we were told, they performed day and night, at ſtated times. The wall is built of brick, and is about twenty-five or thirty feet high; having embraſures, and ſquare towers, at equal diſtances; and a wide deep ditch, which may be filled with water at pleaſure. On the top of the wall there is a pleaſant walk, broad enough for fifteen horſemen to ride a-breaſt. I ſuppoſe the whole is, perhaps, not compoſed of ſolid bricks, but the middle filled up with earth and rubbiſh.

The 25th, we went to all the three convents, and took leave of our friends the miſſionaries.

The 26th, the ambaſſador went to the tribunal for foreign affairs, and received a letter from the Emperor

to

CHAP. XI. 1721. to his Czariſh Majeſty. On this occaſion the preſident acquainted his excellency, that he muſt conſider this letter as a ſingular mark of favour to his maſter, as their Emperors were not in uſe to write letters of compliment to any prince; or, indeed, to write letters of any kind, except thoſe which contained their orders to their ſubjects; and, that the Emperor diſpenſed with ſo material a cuſtom, only, to teſtify his reſpect for his Czariſh Majeſty.

The original of this letter was in the CHINESE language, and a copy of it in the MONGALIAN. It was folded up in a long roll, according to the cuſtom in CHINA, and wrapped in a piece of yellow ſilk, which was tied to a man's arm, and carried, in proceſſion, before the ambaſſador. All perſons on horſeback, whom we met, diſmounted, and ſtood till we had paſſed them. Such veneration do theſe people pay to every thing belonging to the Emperor.

The ſame day, the ambaſſador had a viſit from a young gentleman, a deſcendent of the famous CHINESE philoſopher CONFUCIUS; whoſe memory and works are greatly reſpected in CHINA. From what I could learn of this eminent philoſopher, he appears to have been a perſon of extraordinary parts, extenſive know-

knowledge, and examplary virtue. On account of such rare qualities, his family is still honoured and esteemed even by the Emperor himself. CHAP. XII. 1721.

CHAPTER XII.

Some account of the present Emperor of CHINA, *the* CHINESE *wall, &c.*

BEFORE we leave CHINA, I shall make a few general remarks, on the people and country, drawn from the best information I could procure; and shall begin with the long wall.

The long, or endless wall, as it is commonly called, encompasses all the north and west parts of CHINA. It was built, about six hundred years ago, by one of the Emperors, to prevent the frequent incursions of the MONGALLS, and other western TARTARS, who made a practice of assembling numerous troops of horse, and invading the country in different places. The CHINESE frontiers were too extensive to be guarded against such bold and numerous enemies; who, after plundering and destroying a wealthy country, returned to their own, loaded with spoils.

The CHINESE finding all precautions ineffectual to

CHAP. XII. 1721. put a ſtop to the inroads of ſuch barbarians, at laſt reſolved to build this famous wall. It begins in the province of LEOTONG, at the bottom of the bay of NANKIN; and proceeds a-croſs rivers, and over the tops of the higheſt mountains, without interruption, keeping nearly along the circular ridge of barren rocks that ſurround the country to the north and weſt; and, after running ſouthwards about twelve hundred ENGLISH miles, ends in impaſſable mountains and ſandy deſerts.

The foundation conſiſts of large blocks of ſquare ſtones laid in mortar; but the reſt of the wall is built of brick. The whole is ſo ſtrong, and well built, as to need almoſt no repair; and, in ſuch a dry climate, may remain in this condition for many ages. It's heighth and breadth are not equal in every place; nor, indeed, is it neceſſary they ſhould. When carried over ſteep rocks, where no horſe can paſs, it is about fifteen or twenty feet high, and broad in proportion; but, when running through a valley, or croſſing a river, there you ſee a ſtrong wall, about thirty feet high, with ſquare towers, at the diſtance of a bow-ſhot from one another, and embraſures at equal diſtances. The top of the wall is flat, and paved with broad free-ſtone; and

and where it riſes over a rock, or any eminence, you ascend by a fine eaſy ſtone-ſtair. CHAP. XII. 1721.

The bridges, over rivers and torrents, are exceedingly neat, being both well contrived and executed. They have two ſtories of arches, one above another, to afford ſufficient paſſage for the waters on ſudden rains and floods.

This wall was begun and completely finiſhed in the ſpace of five years; every ſixth man in CHINA being obliged to work himſelf, or find another in his ſtead. It is reported, the labourers ſtood ſo cloſe, for many miles diſtance, as to hand the materials from one to another. This I am the more inclined to believe, as the rugged rocks would prevent all uſe of carriages; nor could clay, for making bricks or cement, of any kind, be found among them.

The building of this wall, however, was not the only burden the CHINESE ſupported, on this occaſion. They were alſo obliged to keep a numerous army in the field, to guard the paſſes of the mountains, and ſecure the labourers from being interrupted by their watchful enemies the TARTARS, who, all the while, were not idle ſpectators.

I am of opinion, that no nation in the world was

CHAP. XII. able for ſuch an undertaking, except the CHINESE. For,
1721. though ſome other kingdom might have furniſhed a ſufficient number of workmen, for ſuch an enterpriſe, none but the ingenious, ſober, and parſimonious CHINESE could have preſerved order amidſt ſuch multitudes, or patiently ſubmitted to the hardſhips attending ſuch a labour. This ſurpriſing piece of work, if not the greateſt, may juſtly be reckoned among the wonders of the world. And the Emperor, who planned and completed it, deſerves fame, as much ſuperior to his who built the famous EGYPTIAN pyramids, as a performance of real uſe excells a work of vanity.

Beſides the main wall, there are ſeveral ſemicircular walls, which have the long wall for their diameter, at the places leaſt fortified by nature, and at the open paſſes of the mountains. Theſe are ſtrongly built, of the ſame materials and architecture with the long wall, and are of conſiderable extent, ſometimes on one ſide of the main wall, and ſometimes on the other. In theſe walls are ſtrong gates, conſtantly defended by a numerous guard. They are intended to prevent a ſurpriſe, and ſtop ſudden irruptions of the enemy. Even theſe leſſer bulwarks ſeem works of great expence and labour; but nothing in compariſon with the long wall.

After

After the CHINESE had finiſhed their wall, they had CHAP. XII.
reſpite for a conſiderable time, from the invaſions of 1721.
their enemies, reaping the fruits of their labour in peace and quietneſs. However, about five hundred years ago, the weſtern TARTARS found means to get through the wall, and, with a powerful army of horſe, entered the country, carrying terror along with them wherever they went. They, at laſt, became maſters of the greateſt part of CHINA, and kept poſſeſſion of it for many years, till the CHINESE, exaſperated by their tyranny, took advantage of their negligence, and drove them back, with diſgrace, to their ancient habitations in the deſerts. The CHINESE now began to re-eſtabliſh their former government, to rectify diſorders, and repair deſolations made by the TARTARS. From this time they enjoyed long peace, till the fatal year one thouſand ſix hundred and forty, when the MANTZUR TARTARS conquered the whole empire of CHINA; which conqueſt they retain to this day; and, by their prudent management and mild government, ſeem in a fair way to keep it.

I ſhall briefly relate in what manner this ſtrange revolution was brought about, by ſo ſmall a nation as the MANTZURS; a people whom the CHINESE deſpiſed, and

CHAP. XII. 1721. who bear no greater proportion to the CHINESE than the inhabitants of WALES to the reſt of GREAT BRITAIN.

It happened, during a time of profound peace, that a certain prince of MANTZUR, going to fetch his bride, from a place bordering on the province of LEOTONG, was, without provocation, attacked by a party of CHINESE, and ſlain, with moſt of his attendants; againſt all laws of juſtice and good neighbourhood.

The TARTARS, though highly exaſperated, behaved with uncommon moderation on this occaſion. Before proceeding to make repriſals, or taking any ſtep whatever with that view, they ſent ambaſſadors, to the court of PEKIN, demanding ſatisfaction for the outrage committed upon one of their princes. Their complaints were neglected, and the matter, under various pretences, delayed, from time to time, till the TARTARS, loſing all patience, and poſitively inſiſting on an anſwer to their demands, were affronted, and contemptuouſly diſmiſſed by the CHINESE miniſtry, to whom the Emperor had referred them. This treatment highly enraged the whole race of the TARTARS; who immediately vowed revenge; and, having got an army together, entered

tered the province of LEOTONG, which lies without the wall, waſting all with fire and ſword. CHAP. XII. 1721.

Beſides this war with the TARTARS, ſeveral other circumſtances concurred to bring about a revolution in the empire; for, at the ſame time, there happened a great inſurrection in CHINA, which, at laſt, became general. The rebels were commanded by one named LI; who, after having defeated the imperial army ſent to oppoſe him, inveſted and took PEKIN itſelf. And the Emperor, rather than fall into the hands of his furious ſubjects, firſt hanged his daughter, and then himſelf, on a tree in his own garden.

The Emperor's general, USANGUE, ſtill kept the field with the ſmall remains of his troops; but altogether unable to reſiſt the powerful army of the rebels. He therefore retired northwards; and, all hopes of ſucceſs being loſt, came to a reſolution of calling in the TARTARS to his aſſiſtance. He promiſed them many rewards, and, particularly, the province of LEOTONG; if, by their aid, he ſucceeded in forcing the rebels to obedience. KUM-TI, the TARTAR chief, readily hearkened to the propoſal, and the terms were ſoon ſettled between the parties.

In conſequence of this agreement, the new allies joined

CHAP. XII. 1721. joined armies, which were both commanded by the TARTAR, and advanced towards the long wall. But, before they reached the gate, KUM-TI, the TARTAR Prince, died, and left his ſon XUNGSTI, a child of ſeven years of age, for his ſucceſſor. This accident did not retard the progreſs of the expedition; for this child was left to the guardianſhip of his uncle; a man of great abilities and addreſs, and perfectly qualified to conduct the important project then on foot.

Immediately after the death of KUM-TI, the young Prince was proclaimed King of the MANTZURS, and commander in chief of the combined army of TARTARS and CHINESE. In order to magnify the number of TARTARS in the army, and conſequently render themſelves more formidable to the rebels, they luckily fell upon a ſtratagem; which was, to dreſs all the CHINESE ſoldiers in TARTAR habits. And, at entering the wall, the real TARTARS, in the army, did not exceed eight thouſand men; though, indeed, they were followed by ſtrong reinforcements.

When they arrived at the wall, the CHINESE, who kept guard, ſeeing a child at the head of ſuch an army, which they imagined to conſiſt wholly of TARTARS, were ſo ſurpriſed, that they immediately opened the gates,

gates, without the leaſt reſiſtance, crying out, long live the Emperor. This circumſtance, added to the reports of ſo formidable an army of TARTARS, increaſing daily by reinforcements, ſtruck ſuch terror into the rebels, that many of them forſook their leader. The TARTARS ſtill advanced, and had daily ſkirmiſhes and ſeveral battles with the rebels, in which the latter were defeated. In the mean time, the guardian took care to leave garriſons in all the towns through which they paſſed, with ſtrict orders, to uſe the inhabitants with the greateſt humanity. Such mild behaviour gained the affection of the nation in general. And thus he proceeded, from one province to another, till the whole empire ſubmitted to his juriſdiction. CHAP. XII. 1721.

The war, which had laſted ſome years, being now at an end, and peace re-eſtabliſhed, the CHINESE thanked the TARTARS for their good ſervices, and deſired they would return to their own country. But the TARTAR chief, on various pretences, delayed his departure, till ſuch time as he found his party ſufficiently ſtrong to fix his nephew, XUNGSTI, on the imperial throne of CHINA.

XUNGSTI died a young man, and left his ſecond ſon, KAMHI, to ſucceed him. On finding himſelf at the point

CHAP. XII. 1721. point of death, he called for his eldeſt ſon, and asked him, whether he would take upon him the government? but, being young and modeſt, he was unwilling to accept, and begged his father would excuſe him on that account. Then KAMHI was called, and asked the ſame queſtion. He was better inſtructed, and briskly anſwered, he was ready to obey his father's commands, and would take the weight of the government upon him. *This anſwer ſo pleaſed the* Emperor, that he named him his ſucceſſor; and, accordingly, on the death of his father, he was proclaimed Emperor; and his behaviour has ſhown him altogether worthy of that honour. It is, it ſeems, agreeable to the laws and cuſtoms of CHINA, that the Emperor chuſe, for his ſucceſſor, which of his ſons he pleaſes without regard to primogeniture.

Although the Emperor's name is KAMHI, the weſtern TARTARS call him BOGHDOY-CHAN, ſignifying chief governor; but the CHINESE, in talking of him, ſay VAN-SUY, which ſignifies, many times ten thouſand years; meaning, let the Emperor live ſo long. This is a high title in the ORIENTAL phraſe. His ſons are called VAN, ſignifying ten thouſand years; and are diſtinguiſhed

guiſhed by the names of VAN the firſt, VAN the ſe- CHAP. XII.
cond, &c. according to their age. 1721.

KAMHI, the preſent Emperor, has about twenty ſons, and, it is ſaid, he intends the fourteenth for his ſucceſſor. He is a prince eminent for prudence and valour; and had, at this time, the command of an army againſt the KALMUCKS.

KAMHI hath yet the remains of a graceful perſon. His countenance is open, his diſpoſition generous, and he gives great application to buſineſs; qualities abſolutely neceſſary to manage the great affairs with which he is intruſted. His reign has been long and proſperous, though ſometimes diſturbed by dangerous inſurrections, and open rebellions; but his good fortune, and prudent conduct, overcoming all difficulties, reſtored publick tranquillity, and he has now, for a conſiderable time, enjoyed perfect peace and happineſs. Although the government of CHINA is abſolute, it requires no ſmall ſagacity and skill to rule an empire of ſuch extenſive dominions, and containing ſo numerous ſubjects.

After KAMHI had ſettled his affairs at home, the firſt ſtep he took was to gain the weſtern or MONGALL TARTARS to his friendſhip. The CHINESE had no enemies ſo formidable. The Emperor knew their va-

CHAP. XII. 1721. lour, and had employed many of them in his army, who did him ſignal ſervices on many occaſions. To effect this, he began to form alliances with their princes and chiefs, by inter-marriages between their families and his, where theſe could take place; others he allured by rich preſents; ſo that they are, at preſent, little better than his ſubjects. And, by this maſterpiece of politicks, he ſucceeded more effectually than if he had employed the whole force of CHINA. The friendſhip of the weſtern TARTARS is of great importance to the Emperor; for they not only ſupply PEKIN with proviſions, the produce of their flocks; but, upon any emergency, can bring to his aſſiſtance fifty thouſand horſe, on a ſhort warning.

It may eaſily be imagined, that great armies and ſtrict diſcipline are neceſſary to guard ſo extenſive territories, and keep ſuch a numerous people to their duty. The number of ſoldiers, reported to be in the empire, is prodigious, and almoſt incredible. I am well informed that the ſingle province and city of PEKIN contain no leſs than one hundred and twenty thouſand effective men, all well paid, cloathed, and armed.

Notwithſtanding the vaſt revenues which are neceſſary for the ſupport of the government, the duties on inland

inland trade muſt be very eaſy; for I was told by a merchant, that he could live in the capital, and trade in what branches of buſineſs he pleaſed, for paying only one ounce of ſilver annually to the Emperor. Such eaſy taxes ſhow the great oeconomy and moderation of KAMHI, whoſe reign is called the reign of great peace and reſt; in CHINESE *Tay-ping*. CHAP. XII. 1721.

The TARTARS call CHINA KITAY, and the people KITAYTZI; but the CHINESE call themſelves CHUM-QUOTIGEN, that is, the people of the middle region.

The empire of CHINA is, in a manner, ſeparated from all the reſt of the world; ſituated in a fine and healthy climate, ſurrounded by the ocean to the eaſt and ſouth; by a chain of high rocks and barren mountains on the north and weſt, along which runs the famous wall as an additional defence. But what, in my opinion, is a greater ſecurity to the empire againſt invaders, than any thing yet mentioned, is the barren deſert, ſtretching for ſeveral hundred miles weſtward, where none but TARTARS can ſubſiſt, and which ſcarce any regular army can paſs. The ſeas, to the ſouth and eaſt, are, indeed, open; and CHINA might be attacked on that ſide; but, I am perſuaded, no prince will think it proper to diſturb his own repoſe, and that

CHAP. XII. 1721. of ſuch a powerful people, inclined to peace with all their neighbours; and ſatisfied, as they ſeem, with their own dominions.

I know but one nation who could attempt the conqueſt of CHINA, with any probability of ſucceſs, and that is RUSSIA; but the territories of that empire are ſo extenſive, in this quarter of the world, as to exceed even the bounds of ambition itſelf; and the RUSSIANS ſeem to entert in no deſire of extending them farther.

What part of CHINA I ſaw is moſtly plain, interſperſed with hills and riſing grounds. The whole is pleaſant and well cultivated, producing wheat and other grain, together with abundance of cattle and poultry.

Beſides the neceſſaries, the CHINESE have alſo many of the ſuperfluities of life; particularly, fine fruits, of various kinds, too tedious to mention. They have likewiſe mines of gold, ſilver, copper, lead, and iron. They ſet a greater value on ſilver, in proportion to gold, than the EUROPEANS do; ſo that gold is exported to good advantage.

In CHINA are many navigable rivers, and canals, cut to great diſtances, for the convenience of water-carriage.

age. The merchants are immenſely rich by their in- CHAP. XII.
land and foreign trade, which they carry on, to great 1721.
extent, with the RUSSIANS and TARTARS; beſides the vaſt ſums of money they receive annually from the EUROPEANS, in exchange for tea, CHINA-ware, and other merchandiſe. The trade alſo to JAPAN, and the neighbouring iſlands, is very conſiderable. What is moſt remarkable in their payments, is, that they receive only dollars, crown and half-crown pieces; undervaluing ſmaller coins, of equal weight and ſtandard, though they melt all down directly into bars of different ſizes.

Tea is univerſally uſed, at all times, and by perſons of all ranks. Both the green and bohea grow on the ſame tree, or rather ſhrub, called by the CHINESE tzay. The green tea is called tzin tzay, and the bohea ouy-tzay. When the leaves are gathered, at the proper ſeaſon, they are put into large kettles, and dried over a gentle fire; which makes them crumple up, and prevents their crumbling to duſt; which they would infallibly do, without this precaution.

What is deſigned for bohea, is mixed, in drying, with the juice of a certain plant, which gives it the colour and flavour, and qualifies that ſharpneſs, which, in conſtant drinking, is hurtful to ſome tender conſtitutions.

85464

CHAP. XII. 1721. tions. The cultivating, gathering, dreſſing, and packing of this uſeful plant, muſt employ a great number of hands; and particularly, of old and young people, who would be unfit for harder labour.

The high rates, at which tea is ſold in EUROPE, are a little ſurpriſing, conſidering the prices in CHINA. For, at PEKIN, the price of the beſt tea, either green or bohea, is half an ounce of ſilver the CHINESE pound; which is equal to what it would be at two ſhillings a-pound in ENGLAND. And allowing the freight and duties to be high, yet the profits ſeem ſomewhat extravagant. I ſhall only add, on this ſubject, that the tea, commonly ſold at PEKIN, is preferable, in quality, to what is imported to EUROPE from CANTON; and, that the CHINESE drink it without ſugar, though ſugar is a produce of the country, and conſequently very cheap.

Several of the CHINESE manufactures are brought to great perfection; eſpecially that of weaving ſilk, damasks, and other ſtuffs; which are partly worn by the natives, and partly exported. Silks are the common dreſs, of the better ſort of people, of both ſexes; and coarſe cotton-cloth that of the lower claſs. They uſe almoſt no woolen cloths; becauſe, they ſay, in their climate

climate they gather too much duſt. They have great abundance of raw ſilk. They make no muſlines, nor fine chints; neither are theſe much uſed. CHAP. XII. 1721.

The CHINESE, it is well known, are excellent performers in ſeveral mechanic arts; particularly, as potters, dyers, japanners, joiners, and paper-makers. In the article of paper-making they excel even the EUROPEANS.

Their workmanſhip in metals is but clumſy; except only founding, at which they are very expert. The arts of ſtatuary, ſculpture, and painting, have made but ſmall progreſs among them. They have excellent water-colours of all ſorts, but none in oil. The chief ſtudy of their painters ſeems to be landskip-painting; and I have ſeen ſome of their performances, in this way, very natural.

They have many quarries of fine marble, of different colours; but not ſo much as a ſingle ſtatue is to be ſeen in the Emperor's garden.

The making of clocks and watches was lately introduced, under the protection of the preſent Emperor; who, at his leiſure hours, amuſes himſelf with whatever is curious either in art or nature.

The CHINESE are a civilized and hoſpitable people; com-

CHAP. XII. 1721. complaiſant to ſtrangers, and to one another; very regular in their manners and behaviour, and reſpectful to their ſuperiors; but, above all, their regard for their parents, and decent treatment of their women of all ranks, ought to be imitated, and deſerve great praiſe. Theſe good qualities are a natural conſequence of the ſobriety, and uniformity of life, to which they have been long accuſtomed.

The general regularity, and decency of manners, among the CHINESE, is obvious to all who ſee and obſerve them with the leaſt attention. And, as they are ſingular, in many things, beyond moſt other nations; they are ſo, likewiſe, in this point of polity, which I cannot omit taking notice of in my tranſient remarks.

It may eaſily be imagined, that, in ſo populous a city, there muſt be many idle perſons of both ſexes; though, I believe, fewer than in moſt other cities of the world, even in thoſe of much leſs extent than that of PEKIN. In order to prevent all diſorderly practices, as much as poſſible, the government have thought fit to permit, or connive at, certain places, in the ſuburbs, for the reception and entertainment of proſtitutes, who are maintained by the landlords of the houſes in which they dwell; but not allowed to ſtraggle abroad.

I have

I have been informed, that theſe ladies of pleaſure have all ſeparate apartments; with the price of each lady, deſcribing, at the ſame time, her beauties and qualities, written, over the door of her apartment, in fair legible characters; which price is paid directly by the gallant; by which means, theſe affairs are conducted without noiſe in the houſes, or diſturbances in the neighbourhood. Noiſy brawls are very ſeldom, hardly ever, known at PEKIN; thoſe who are found offending, in this way, undergo very ſevere penalties. It is likewiſe to be obſerved, that theſe houſes are calculated for the meaner ſort of people only; ſo that any perſon, who hath the leaſt regard to his credit or reputation, carefully avoids being ſeen in them. CHAP. XII. 1721.

I muſt, however, take notice of one ſhocking and unnatural practice; which appears more extraordinary in a country ſo well regulated and governed as CHINA. I mean, that of expoſing ſo many new-born infants in the ſtreets. This, indeed, is only done by the poor, who have more wives than they can maintain. To prevent the death of theſe children, there are publick hoſpitals appointed for their reception, and people ſent out through the ſtreets, every morning, to pick up, and carry thither, ſuch children as they find expoſed. The

CHAP. XII. 1721. miſſionaries alſo ſend out people to take up ſuch as have been neglected, who are carried to a private hoſpital, maintained at their charge, and educated in the CHRISTIAN religion. And of ſuch perſons do the greateſt part of the CHINESE CHRISTIANS conſiſt.

I ſhall now make a few remarks upon the ladies, who have many good qualities beſides their beauty. They are very cleanly, and modeſt in their dreſs. Their eyes are black, and ſo little, that, when they laugh, you can ſcarce ſee them. Their hair is black as jet, and neatly tied up, in a knot, on the crown of the head, adorned with artificial flowers of their own making; which are very becoming. The better ſort, who are ſeldom expoſed to the air, have good complexions. Thoſe who are inclined to the olive, take care to add a touch of white and red paint, which they apply very nicely.

The ladies of diſtinction are ſeldom permitted to ſtir abroad, except to viſit their neareſt relations; and, on theſe occaſions, they are always carried in cloſe chairs, and attended by their ſervants. The women of all ranks ſtay pretty much at home. The ſmallneſs of their feet, which renders them unable to walk to any conſiderable diſtance, makes their confinement leſs.

leſs diſagreeable. As ſoon as a girl comes into the world, they bind her tender feet with tight bandages, which are renewed as occaſion requires, to prevent their growing. This cuſtom prevails univerſally, the TARTAR ladies, reſiding in CHINA, only excepted, who appear to have no inclination to conform to this faſhion. CHAP. XII. 1721.

This faſhion was introduced into CHINA by a great Princeſs, who lived ſome ages ago. She was a lady of extraordinary beauty and virtue, and has obtained the reputation of a ſaint; but, it is reported, her feet reſembled thoſe of birds; on which account ſhe kept them always carefully wrapped up, and concealed even from the Emperor her husband. The ladies of the court followed her example; which, of courſe, ſoon became general. The CHINESE women never pare their nails; but ſuffer them to grow to the full length. This proves no impediment in embroidery, and other needle-work, in which they are conſtantly employed. Theſe they finiſh with extraordinary neatneſs, as fully appears from ſome ſpecimens of them brought to EUROPE.

The CHINESE deſerve great praiſe for their patience in finiſhing, completely, every thing they undertake. And, what is ſtill a greater recommendation, their la-

CHAP. XII. 1721. bours are not the effect of whim or caprice, but calculated to ſerve ſome uſeful purpoſe. The publick works, about the city of PEKIN, are inſtances of theſe obſervations. The ſtreets, in particular, are the fineſt in the world. They are ſpacious, neat, and ſtraight. The canals, which ſupply the city with water, have, at proper diſtances, commodious ſtone-bridges over them; and theſe canals are not only built with free-ſtone, on the ſides, but the bottoms of them paved with broad cut-ſtones, in the neateſt manner imaginable. There are but few ſprings of ſoft water in PEKIN. And the water, in general, though a little brackiſh, is by no means unwholeſome.

The CHINESE are generally of a middle ſize, and ſlender make; but very active. They are honeſt, and obſerve the ſtricteſt honour and juſtice in their dealings. It muſt, however, be acknowledged, that not a few of them are much addicted to knavery, and well skilled in the arts of cheating. They have, indeed, found many EUROPEANS as great proficients in that art as themſelves. And if you once cheat them, they are ſure to retaliate on the firſt opportunity.

As to the religion of the CHINESE, I cannot pretend to give a diſtinct account of it. According to the beſt infor-

information I could procure, they are divided into ſe- CHAP. XII.
veral ſects; among which, that of the Theiſts is the 1721.
moſt rational and reſpectable. They worſhip one GOD, whom they call TIEN, the Heaven or the higheſt Lord, and pay no religious homage to the images of their countrymen. This ſect has ſubſiſted for many ages longer than CHRISTIANITY, and is ſtill moſt in vogue; being embraced by the Emperor himſelf, and moſt of the grandees, and men of learning. The common people are generally idolaters. The few JEWS and MAHOMETANS, reſiding here, are ſuppoſed to have entered CHINA about ſix or ſeven hundred years ago, in company with the weſtern TARTARS. There is a very inconſiderable ſect, called Croſs-worſhippers. They worſhip the holy croſs; but have loſt all other marks of CHRISTIANITY; which makes it probable the goſpel was preached in this country before the arrival of the miſſionaries; but by whom is uncertain. The CHRISTIANS, at preſent, are computed to amount to one hundred thouſand, of both ſexes. I have been told, the CHINESE have alſo ſome Atheiſts among them.

I had ſeveral opportunities of talking with their phyſicians. They, generally, both prepare and adminiſter their own preſcriptions, and are very little acquainted

CHAP. XII. 1721. quainted with the medicinal ſyſtem practiſed in EUROPE. As they have but few chymical preparations, their chief ſtudy is the virtues of plants, which they apply on all occaſions, and often with ſucceſs. They feel the patient's pulſe for four or five minutes, and very ſeldom let blood, even in high fevers. They compare a fever to a boiling pot, and chuſe rather to take the fire from it than diminiſh the quantity of liquor it contains, which would only make it boil the faſter. Bathing and cupping are much practiſed; and they even apply fire in ſome caſes, particularly for pains in the joints, and gouty diſorders. On theſe occaſions they apply a lighted match, compoſed of the downy ſubſtance that grows on mugwort, to the part affected; which, making a ſcar, either entirely removes or conſiderably mitigates the pain.

I cannot but take notice, on this occaſion, of a famous plant, called gingſing, which grows in the province of LEOTONG. The root of this plant is ſo much eſteemed for its phyſical virtues, that it is gathered by people, appointed by the Emperor, for this purpoſe only; and is valued at the rate of about twenty five pounds Sterling the pound weight. It is ſo rare, that the Emperor ſent two pounds of it only in a preſent

to

to his Czariſh Majeſty. There are two ſorts of it; one looks as if candied; the other like ſmall parſley roots, and has ſomething of the ſame taſte. They ſlice down or pound it; and, after infuſion and ſlight boiling, give it to the patient. I could never learn from their phyſicians, what ſpecific qualities this plant poſſeſſed, only that it was of univerſal uſe. I have heard many ſtories of ſtrange cures performed by it; that perſons, ſeemingly dead, have, by its means, been reſtored to health. I believe, indeed, it may be a good reſtorative plant; but, if it really has any extraordinary virtues, I could never diſcover them, though I have made many experiments on it, at different times. I ſhould imagine this rare plant might be cultivated, with ſucceſs, in the country where it grows naturally; and it appears improbable the CHINESE would neglect ſuch a ſovereign remedy. CHAP. XII. 1721.

The great men in CHINA follow the example of the weſtern ASIATICS, in keeping eunuchs to attend them; who are their counſellors, and chief confidants, on all occaſions. Their buſineſs is to take care of the women; and, being in a manner detached from the world, they are much reſpected. Caſtrating is a trade in CHINA; and ſo skilful and dexterous are the performers

CHAP. XII. mers that few die under their hands. I knew a man, 1721. who, being reduced to low circumſtances, ſold himſelf to be made a eunuch, after he was thirty years of age.

The language of the CHINESE is compoſed chiefly of monoſyllables, and, ſeems to me, eaſily acquired; at leaſt as much of it as is ſufficient for converſation. The difficulty of learning their letters, or rather marks for words, cannot be ſo great as is commonly repreſented; for you ſcarce meet a common hawker who cannot read and write what belongs to his calling. It requires, indeed, much labour, and conſiderable abilities, to acquire the character of a learned man in CHINA.

I have mentioned above a few only of their manufactures. I cannot omit taking notice of their paper, which is made both of ſilk and cotton, and is remarkably clean and ſmooth. They had been in poſſeſſion of this art, for many ages, before they had any intercourſe with the EUROPEANS, as appears from their records. Their ſheets are made larger than any I ever ſaw in EUROPE; and, though they generally write with hair pencils, I have ſeen CHINESE paper that bore our pens and ink very well.

Their ink, called *touſh*, is well known to our painters and deſigners. I was told, the chief ingredient in it

it, is the burnt bones of animals. They have ſeveral ſorts of it; but the beſt is very cheap, and is made up in paſtes of various figures, ſtamped with characters or letters. It is generally put up in little flat boxes, ſometimes double the value of the ink they contain. CHAP. XII. 1721.

I ſhall here inſert a ſpecimen of CHINESE numbers, and a few capital words, with thoſe of ſeveral other ASIATIC nations.

CHINESE numbers.

1	Iga.	16	Shileoga.
2	Langa.	17	Shiziga.
3	Sanga.	18	Shiſpaga.
4	Siga.	19	Shizuga.
5	Uga.	20	Shielga.
6	Leoga.	30	Shinſhiga.
7	Tziga.	40	Tzeziga.
8	Paga.	50	Uſhiga.
9	Tziuga.	60	Leoſhiga.
10	Shiga.	70	Tziſhiga.
11	Shiyga.	80	Paſhiga.
12	Shierga.	90	Tzioſhiga.
13	Shiſenga.	100	Ibay.
14	Shiſga.	1000	Itzen.
15	Shiuga.	10000	Van.

CHAP. XII. A ſpecimen of ENGLISH and CHINESE words.

1721.

God	Foy.	Wind	Fung.
The heavens	Tien.	Rain	Eu.
The earth	Tiye.	Good	Cho.
The ſun	Shilo.	Bad	Pu.
The moon	Jualang.	A good friend	Cho-pung-yu.
The ſtars	Tziſing.	Farewell	Manſay-lea.
The devil	Kuy.	Fire	Choa.
Water	Shuy.	Bread	Bobon.

The MANTZUR's numbers.

1	Emu.	6	Nynguin.
2	Dio.	7	Naadan.
3	Ilan.	8	Iaachun.
4	Tuin.	9	Une.
5	Suindja.	10	Ioan, &c.

The MONGALL's numbers, and ſome of their words.

1	Neggea.	9	Juſſu.
2	Choir.	10	Arba.
3	Gurba.	11	Arba-neggea.
4	Dirbu.	12	Arba-Choir.
5	Tabu.	13	Arba-gurba.
6	Zurga.	14	Arba-dirbu.
7	Dolo.	15	Arba-tabu.
8	Nauma.	16	Arba-zurga.

17	Arba-dolo.	100	Dzo.
18	Arba-nauma.	1000	Minga.
19	Arba-juſſu.	10000	Tumea.
20	Choiry.	God	Burchan.
30	Gutſhy.	The heavens	Tengery.
40	Dutſhy.	The earth	Gadzar.
50	Taby.	The ſun	Narra.
60	Dira.	The moon	Shara.
70	Dala.	The ſtars	Odu.
80	Naya.	The clouds	Ulea.
90	Irea.		

The TANGUT's numbers.

1	Dgi.	6	Duk.
2	Neé.	7	Dunn.
3	Sum.	8	Dja.
4	Che.	9	Gu.
5	Gno.	10	Dju-tamba, &c.

Numbers of INDOSTAN.

1	Eck.	6	Tzo.
2	Duy.	7	Tateé.
3	Tin.	8	Aatſa.
4	Tzar.	9	Nouy.
5	Penge.	10	Daſs, &c.

CHAP. XII. 1721. The people of INDOSTAN have little or no correſpondence with CHINA; being ſeparated from it by impaſſable mountains and barren deſerts. They call CHINA by the name of KITAT; and the Emperor, Amola-Chan.

The INDIANS call RUSSIA OLT.

The firſt great Lama, or high Prieſt, near the borders of INDIA, is called Beyngin-Bogdu; and hath his reſidence at a place called DIGERDA.

The ſecond is the Delay-Lama, reſiding at LAHASSAR; the INDIANS call him Tamtzy-Kenna. From DIGERDA to LAHASSAR is a month's journey on foot.

The third is the Kutuchtu, called by the INDIANS Tarranat, who reſides at the URGA, not far from SELINGINSKY.

The preſent Great Mogul is called SHEYHALIM PATISHA. The INDIAN married prieſts are the Brachmans; their monks are called Atheits, and their military men Reſput.

The INDIAN and TANGUT numbers, together with theſe few notes, I had from the Faquir, at SELINGINSKY; who told me, that the greateſt penance that could be impoſed on any of their order, was a pilgrimage to viſit theſe three high prieſts. Though I have hinted

hinted ſomething concerning them, during my ſtay at SELINGINSKY, yet, as I ſhall have no opportunity in future to learn any thing more about thoſe great men, I think it will not be unacceptable that I have inſerted the foregoing ſhort notes. CHAP. XII. 1721.

I had, from my early youth, a ſtrong inclination to viſit the eaſtern parts of the world; and providence afforded me an opportunity, far beyond my expectations, of gratifying my curioſity in the moſt ample manner. For never, perhaps, were thoſe countries in a more flouriſhing condition than under the famous Emperors, KAMHI and PETER the firſt; and, perhaps, ſuch another conjuncture of circumſtances may not happen for ſeveral ages. I have now finiſhed my account of the obſervations I made during my reſidence in CHINA; and, had we returned by the ſame route we went eaſtward, I ſhould here conclude my journal; but, as our route was different in many places, particularly, in our paſſage, by water, from SELINGINSKY to TOBOLSKY, I ſhall proceed to make my remarks on ſuch places and things, only, as I have hitherto had no opportunity of mentioning.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.
1721.

CHAPTER XIII.

Our departure from PEKIN, *Occurrences, &c. during our journey back towards* MOSCO.

MARCH 2d, we ſent off our heavy baggage, early in the morning; and, about noon, left the fine city of PEKIN, accompanied by ſeveral CHINESE gentlemen, who were to return with Mr. de LANGE, whom his Czariſh Majeſty had appointed to remain, as his agent, at the court of PEKIN. In the evening we reached a large town, called SANGPINGJU, where we lodged.

The 4th, Mr. de LANGE and our friends returned to the city, and we continued our journey. I have already mentioned moſt of the remarkable towns through which we paſſed; and, as little happened on the road worth notice, I ſhall only obſerve, that we were entertained, by the governors, in the ſame hoſpitable manner as before.

The 9th, we arrived at KALGAN, the laſt town of any note, and about three miles diſtant from the long wall. We ſtaid here two days, in order to provide bread, rice, and other proviſions, for our journey over the HUNGRY DESERT.

Next

Next day, the governor waited on the ambaſſador, and invited him to ſee ſome CHINESE troops perform their exerciſe. We accordingly walked into an adjacent field, where we found about four thouſand infantry drawn up in ſix lines. All their guns had matchlocks. The field-officers were on horſeback, armed with bows and arrows; but the ſubalterns on foot, having ſpears, longer or ſhorter, according to their rank. All the troops kept a profound ſilence, till the commanding officer ordered the ſignal to be given for beginning the exerciſe; which was done by firing a ſmall gun, mounted on the back of a camel. Upon this ſignal, they advanced, retreated, and performed their evolutions, according to the diſcipline of the country, in a very regular manner. After finiſhing this exerciſe, the whole corps, at laſt, divided itſelf into companies of fifty men each; and, kneeling as cloſe to one another as poſſible, continued in this poſture for ſome minutes; they then roſe, and, running to their former ſtations, quickly formed themſelves, without the leaſt confuſion. From what I obſerved of their motions, I am of opinion they might eaſily be taught any exerciſe whatever. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The 12th, we arrived at the gates of the main wall, which

CHAP. XIII. 1721. which we found open. Here the commander, and ſeveral officers of the guard, met us, and invited the ambaſſador to walk into the guard-room, and drink a diſh of tea. After this repaſt we proceeded a few miles farther; but, as it was too late to get over the mountains that night, we took up our quarters at a village where we had lodged in going to PEKIN.

Next morning early we left the village; and travelled along the banks of a *torrent*, which runs through a narrow valley, between the mountains. For conveniency of the road we croſſed this rivulet ſeveral times. The weather was very fine and warm, and the face of the country extremely pleaſant. On the ſides of the rocks we ſaw ſcattered many neat cottages, ſurrounded with little gardens and crooked trees, which the CHINESE have naturally deſigned on ſome of their japanned and CHINA-ware. After travelling about a dozen of ENGLISH miles, we aſcended the rocks by a winding path, formed by art; and, as ſoon as we reached the ſummit, we entered on the plain; for there is little or no deſcent into the deſert from the opening between the rocks. I obſerved, that all the rivers which ſpring from the mountains on the north and weſt of CHINA, run towards the ſouth and ſouth-eaſt; and

thoſe

thoſe that riſe weſtward of the deſert, direct their courſes, through SIBERIA, to the north and north-weſt; which makes it evident, that the rocks and deſert are higher than any places either in CHINA or SIBERIA. We now felt a very ſenſible change in the air. In the morning, we left a warm climate; but here, we found the deſert all covered with ſnow. We travelled about five miles farther, and then pitched our tents on the banks of a ſmall rivulet. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The ambaſſador, conſidering, that to travel along with the heavy baggage would render the journey, at this ſeaſon, tedious and diſagreeable, reſolved to leave it under a proper guard, and proceed, by the ſhorteſt and ſpeedieſt way, to SELINGINSKY. LOMY, our former conductor, being appointed in the ſame ſtation, was conſulted on this occaſion; and agreed to make one of our company; while the CHINESE guard, commanded by another officer, took care of the baggage. Our party conſiſted of the ambaſſador, Mr. KRESTITZ, myſelf, and four ſervants. We packed up beds, and a few neceſſaries, and ſet out directly.

We rode very hard all the fourteenth; and, in the evening, took up our lodgings in a MONGALIAN tent, along with the family. The out-ſide of the tent was

CHAP. XIII. hung round with ſeveral pieces of horſe-fleſh; on which
1721. our landlord and his wife ſupped, and invited us to ſhare their repaſt; but, as we had proviſions of our own, we deſired to be excuſed. The diſagreeable ſmell of this ſupper made us reſolve to ſleep in the fields, for the future, till we came to SELINGINSKY; for, although the nights were ſomewhat cold and froſty, the weather was dry and pleaſant.

Next day, having got freſh horſes, we proceeded on our journey. Nothing of moment occurred till the third of April, when we arrived, before noon, on the banks of the river TOLA. It was now nineteen days ſince we left our baggage, during which time we rode very hard, changing horſes generally three or four times a-day, and this was the firſt running water we had ſeen. I cannot help taking notice of the pleaſure that appeared in every face at the ſight of this ſtream; and I need not mention how chearfully we regaled ourſelves on this occaſion. For my own part, I thought the moſt delicious wines of ISPAHAN and THIRAS, not worthy to be compared to this ſimple element; ſo little prized by thoſe who enjoy it in plenty. Our bread was all ſpent ſome days before; however, we had ſtill ſome mutton, with which we had been ſupplied, from

time

time to time, during our journey. All this time we ob- CHAP. XIII.
ſerved no road; but kept moſtly about one, or ſome- 1721.
times two days journey to the northward of our former route. The greateſt danger, attending this way of travelling, aroſe from the arrows which the MONGALLS had ſet in ſtrong bent bows, covered with ſand, for killing antelopes. One of our horſes happened to tread on one of theſe bows; the arrow immediately flew out, and, moſt fortunately, hit the ſtirrup iron; otherwiſe the horſe or rider would have been killed upon the ſpot. We had, indeed, guides to conduct us, from place to place, but they were unacquainted with any ſnares laid beyond their own bounds.

This day, about noon, ſome MONGALLS unluckily ſet fire to the long graſs before us, which, by means of a ſtrong wind, ſoon ſpread to a great diſtance. We immediately retired to the top of a neighbouring hill; (for now the grounds begin to riſe, and the ſoil is much better near the river;) and, ſetting fire to the graſs around us, travelled near a mile in a diſmal cloud of ſmoke. Some of our people who were behind us, and unprovided with flints, were put to hard ſhifts, having their hair and cloaths all ſinged. We forded the TOLA in pretty deep water, and continued our journey

CHAP. XIII. 1721. through pleaſant valleys, between gently riſing hills, ſome of whoſe tops were adorned with woods, which looked as if planted by art.

Nothing worth mentioning occurred, till the morning of the 6th of April, when we reached the river IRO; but found the ford ſo frozen that we could not ride it. As our proviſions were now nearly all ſpent, and we were quite tired of lying in the open air, we wanted to paſs the river at any rate. *After long ſearch* for a ford, we, at laſt, found a place clear of ice; but exceſſively deep. We immediately ſtripped off our cloaths, mounted our horſes, and ſwam a-croſs the river; which was at this place about forty yards broad. After getting all ſafe to the other ſide, we lighted a great fire of ſticks to dry and warm ourſelves; and then ſet forward to the rivulet SARATZYN, the boundary between the RUSSIAN and CHINESE territories, which we reached in the evening. From the TOLA to this place we had ſeen no inhabitants; but here we found a few MONGALLS, ſubjects of RUSSIA, who hoſpitably entertained us with ſuch fare as the place afforded.

The 7th, we ſet out early, and, at noon, came to a zimovey, (a ſingle houſe built for the accommodation of travellers,) inhabited by a RUSSIAN, who entertained

us

us with good bread, and other homely fare. After a short stay we mounted, and, at night, came to another of these houses, belonging to the commissary, Mr. STEPNIKOFF, of the caravan, where we were well provided with necessary accommodations. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

Next day, we arrived in good health at the town of SELINGINSKY; and all of us had good reason to return our most grateful thanks to the almighty Disposer of all events, who conducted us safe through so many dangers, without the least accident befalling any of our company.

The 12th, the ambassador having made the conductor an handsome present, and thanked him for his trouble and obliging behaviour, that gentleman took leave, and returned to CHINA.

Next day, we set out, on horse-back, for IRKUTSKY. We lodged every night in villages till the 16th, when we arrived at the POSSOLSKY monastery, situated on the south shore of the BAYKAL sea, as formerly observed. The superior received and entertained us with great hospitality; and furnished us horses and sledges for passing the sea upon the ice, which we found perfectly firm, though the people on the south shore were ploughing and sowing their oats.

April

CHAP. XIII. 1721. April 7th, having taken leave of the monks, we placed ourſelves in the ſledges, and drove along a pathway upon the ice. We found ſeveral large gaps in the ice, which run for many miles a-croſs the ſea, and are generally from two to five, or ſix feet, wide. Theſe we paſſed on long boards, which we were obliged to carry along with us, for that purpoſe. They are made, I conjecture, by the air; which, being pent up under the ice, burſts out through theſe apertures. I obſerved alſo a number of ſmall round holes, which are made by the ſeals, who come thither for breath and to bask themſelves in the ſun. Theſe circumſtances render travelling on the ice extremely dangerous, except in day light, and clear weather. Towards evening the ambaſſador and myſelf, being provided with light ſledges, put on at a great rate, in order to get in with the ſhore before night. This we happily accompliſhed, and arrived at a fiſherman's houſe, near the mouth of the ANGARA; where we found a warm room, and a boar's head, hot from the oven, for ſupper. But, a little before ſun-ſet, a thick fog aroſe to the weſtward, accompanied with terrible thick drifts of ſnow, which ſoon covered the road upon the ice, and filled every gap and hole. Our poor people, who had not yet reached

the

the land, were caught in the ſtorm, forced to ſtop ſhort, CHAP. XIII.
and ly on the ice all night, with their horſes and car- 1721.
riages. We had, indeed, diſpatched the fiſhermen to conduct them to the ſhore; but the ſnow continuing to fall very thick, they returned without being able to find them. This diſappointment created in us ſome uneaſineſs; but there was no remedy. We were obliged to wait patiently till the morning, when they arrived in a very diſtreſſed condition; half dead with cold and wet. However, by proper accommodation, and ſome warm liquor, they ſoon recovered.

Next day, we ſent back the ſledges to the monaſtery; and, after our people had refreſhed themſelves with a little ſleep, about noon, we mounted, and proceeded about four miles, to the ſmall chapel of ST. NICOLAS. We had now paſſed all the cataracts, and there was no ice to be ſeen in the river; we immediately, therefore, got boats and rowed down the ſtream. In the evening, we put aſhore at a ſmall village, where we lodged; and were plentifully provided with variety of excellent freſh fiſh for ſupper.

The 19th, in the morning, we went again on board; and, about two in the afternoon, landed at IRKUTSKY, and dined with our old friend, Mr. RAKITIN, the commandant

CHAP. XIII. 1721. mandant, who met us on the river, about two hours before we landed. Some days after our arrival, Mr. ISMAYLOFF was ſeized with a fever; which went off in a few days, without any bad conſequences. We waited here for our baggage, which did not arrive till the ſecond of July. During this time, little remarkable happened. We diverted ourſelves with hunting and fiſhing; and, though we lived much at our eaſe, the time grew tedious, and we wanted much to be gone.

About the 10th of May, the ice began to break up, in the BAYKAL, and continued floating down the river, for ſome days, in great ſhoals. The weather was very hot, before the ice came down; but when this happened, an alteration was ſenſibly felt; for the air, about the ſides of the river, became extremely chilly. A ſmall part only of the ice, about the mouth of the ANGARA, floats down that river, the reſt, being ſcattered along the ſhore by the winds, is melted down as the ſeaſon advances. This is accounted the moſt unhealthy ſeaſon of the year; as people, notwithſtanding all poſſible precautions, are very apt to catch cold. I have already made ſome remarks on IRKUTSKY, and the country adjacent; I ſhall therefore only add, that in ſummer, which is very hot, the country is much peſter-

ed

ed with ſwarms of muskitoes and large gnats; which CHAP. XIII.
are ſo troubleſome, that thoſe who have occaſion to go 1721.
into the fields are obliged to wear nets of horſe-hair, to defend their faces from the attacks of theſe inſects.

July 2d, the barks arrived ſafe from SELINGINSKY, with our people and baggage. They told us many diſmal ſtories of the hardſhips they had ſuffered in paſſing the deſert; but, on comparing notes, the difference was not great berween their misfortunes and our own.

After our people had reſted a few days, and neceſſaries were procured for the voyage, on the 5th, they ſhoved off, and rowed down the ANGARA. The ambaſſador, myſelf, and two ſervants, ſtaid behind, in order to proceed in a ſmall ſhallop, which had a little cabbin in the ſtern, and was rowed with ten oars. The commandant cauſed it to be built for our uſe; and as it ſailed quickly, and was rowed by our own men, we could purſue the voyage, at pleaſure, without being confined to attend upon the heavy barks.

The 7th, we went on board, accompanied by the commandant and ſeveral other gentlemen, and fell down the river to a monaſtery in the neighbourhood, where we were invited to dine with the ſuperior, who

CHAP. XIII. made us a grand entertainment of excellent fiſh; and
1721. furniſhed us, beſides, with ſtore of proviſions for our voyage. In the evening we took leave of the abbot, and the reſt of our friends; and, being aſſiſted by a rapid current, went down the river at a great rate. At night we put aſhore, and took up our quarters in a village.

As little of importance occurred during the progreſs of our voyage, I need not be particular in deſcribing it. The banks of the river, on both ſides, are pleaſant and fruitful, and beautifully diverſified with tall woods, villages, and corn-fields; and we found every-where great abundance of fiſh. But what renders this fine country extremely diſagreeable, is the ſwarms of muskitoes, with which every part of it is infeſted. The gnats, about ILIMSKY in particular, are of a much larger ſize, and are reckoned more venomous than any in SIBERIA; but have this good quality, that they never enter houſes, as the muskitoes do. The TONGUSES, when they are angry with any perſon, wiſh that an ILIMSKY gnat may ſting him. This may appear but a ſlight puniſhment; but it marks the character of theſe ſimple people.

The 9th, we ſailed the whole day, with a fair wind and

and ſtrong current; and, in the evening, overtook our barques. Next day, we came to a great cataract, called PADUN from the ſteepneſs of the fall. This fall we paſſed ſafely, as there was water enough upon the rocks for our veſſels. The next cataract we met with, which, from its great length, is called DOLGOY, was reckoned more dangerous; for, beſides the length and deepneſs of the paſſage, it was extremely crooked, winding from one ſide to another by turns, among rocks and great ſtones. In paſſing theſe cataracts, the pilot ſits upon the bow of the veſſel, and makes ſigns, with his cap, to the people at the helm, which way to ſteer; for the waters, daſhing againſt the rocks and great ſtones, make ſuch an hideous noiſe, that not a ſingle articulate ſound can be heard. The oars, beſides, muſt be plied very hard, in order to prevent the veſſel from running to either ſide; for if once ſhe touches the rocks, all the goods muſt infallibly be loſt, and, perhaps, the mens lives; of which diſaſters there are many examples.

CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The 11th, we paſſed another cataract, called SHAMANSKY, which is reckoned the moſt dangerous of them all, the channel being very narrow and crooked. Some of our company choſe to walk along the banks, rather than run the riſque of paſſing by water; but

CHAP. XIII. 1721. they repented of their reſolution; for they were obliged to ſcramble over rocks, and through thickets, where they ſaw many vipers, and other venomous creatures. We ſtopped, at the bottom of the fall, to take them on board, and refreſh our rowers. As the ambaſſador ſtaid on board, I remained along with him.

Beſides theſe three great cataracts, there are many leſſer ones, called by the country-people SHIVERS; but, as the paſſing them is attended with little danger, I make no mention of them.

It is ſurpriſing that loaded veſſels ſhould paſs theſe falls againſt the ſtream. They are commonly warped up by means of ſtrong anchors and cables; and on the goodneſs of the tackle all depends; for ſhould it chance to give way, all is loſt. This is a laborious piece of work, though not very coſtly in theſe parts; and the navigation of this river is attended with no other inconvenience, except that of ſtriking againſt ſtumps of trees hid under the water.

The 14th, we left the ANGARA, and entered the TONGUSKY, a mighty ſtream, formed by the ANGARA, and another ſmall river called ELIM. The TONGUSKY points to the northward of the weſt, and is well ſtored with excellent fiſh.

We

We went aſhore, this day, at a little village, called SEEZA, ſituated on a high bank of the TONGUSKY. Here we were met by our old acquaintance General KANIFER, who came from ELIMSKY to ſee Mr. ISMAYLOFF. I took notice before of having ſeen this gentleman in our journey eaſtward. We diſpatched our barques, and ſtaid with him two days. After which we proceeded down the river; and he returned to ELIMSKY by water, attended only by his own ſervants; for, though he was a priſoner, he had liberty to go where he pleaſed, as an eſcape was impracticable in ſuch remote parts. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The 17th, we ſet ſail with an eaſterly wind, and a ſtrong current, which carried us along with great velocity. We paſſed many villages, and ſome TONGUSIAN huts, upon the banks, to which we made ſeveral viſits. We found the men generally employed in fiſhing in their little canoes, and the women in looking after their children and rain-deer, which, at this ſeaſon, lie near the huts, becauſe the gnats will not ſuffer them to ſtay in the woods. In order to baniſh theſe troubleſome vermin, they light fires all around the place of their abode; and the inſects, unable to endure the ſmoke, immediately fly off. For the ſame reaſon, no perſon ſtirs abroad

CHAP. XIII. abroad without carrying, in his hand, a ſmall earthen pot
1721. filled with ſmoking coals. The canoes ſkim upon the water very ſwiftly, but the leaſt touch of an unskilful hand overſets them. The TONGUSE places himſelf on his knees, in the middle of his boat, keeping it as even balanced as poſſible; and, with a little paddle only, ventures to croſs the greateſt rivers. I have ſeen them haul to the ſide a ſturgeon of great weight. When a TONGUSE wants to go from one river to another, acroſs a neck of land, he takes his boat upon his back, and carries it whither he pleaſes.

The 19th, we were overtaken with ſuch a heavy ſhower of rain, in the middle of the river, that, before we could reach the bank, our boat was half full, notwithſtanding all hands were employed in rowing, or ſcooping out the water. However, after much labour and difficulty, we at laſt got to land, wet to the skin; and, what was much worſe, all our bedding thoroughly drenched in water. After we had hauled up our boat, and faſtened it to a tree, we went into a thick wood, and kindled a great fire to warm and dry ourſelves; but, the rain being abated, a violent ſtorm of wind aroſe from north-weſt, ſo that we were forced to remain all night in this diſmal place, at a great diſtance from

any

any village. In this condition we lay, round a great fire, till next morning. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The 20th, early in the morning, we left the woods, went on board our boat, and proceeded down the river. About noon, we reached a village, on the right hand, where we halted ſome hours to refreſh ourſelves, and dry our cloaths. In the evening, we puſhed off again, and came to another village, where we lodged. On this river are great numbers of water-fowl, of different kinds, which come hither to hatch their young in ſummer; and fly off, to the ſouth, at the approach of winter. I obſerved, alſo, a large fowl, of a grayiſh colour, about the ſize of a kite; after it has hovered for ſometime upon the wing, if it ſpies a fiſh in the water, it ſtoops ſuddenly, ſtrikes it's prey, and even dives below water to catch it; after which it flies to the bank, and eats it.

There are alſo wild goats upon the rocks along the ſhore. They are very large animals, with long and thick horns. Their ſhaggy coat is browniſh, having a black ridge down the back. They have long beards like common goats, but are twice as large. It is ſurpriſing to ſee them leap from one rock to another. They go in pairs about this ſeaſon; but, towards winter

CHAP. XIII. ter, retire, in herds, to the ſouth. On the hills, and
1721. in the woods, are all ſorts of game, and wild beaſts, natural to the climate.

The 21ſt, we overtook our barques, and kept in company with them till night, when we arrived at a village, where we lodged. In this river are many iſlands, ſome of which are very large, and others ſurrounded with high rocky ſhores. Moſt of them are covered with tall birch and pine trees, fit for maſts to the largeſt ſhips; and form a beautiful proſpect. We had no need to go aſhore in order to ſeek ſport, as we found plenty of wild ducks, and other water-fowl, wherever we came. As to freſh fiſh, we had more of them, in every village, than we could conſume.

The two following days we continued our voyage, without meeting with any thing worth mentioning; and, on the morning of the 24th, arrived at the conflux of the rivers YENISEY and TONGUSKY, where the latter loſes it's name; and, both joined, retain the name of YENISEY. The YENISEY falls into the TONGUSKY from the ſouth, and its courſe is then turned northward by the current of the other; which, in my opinion, is the larger of the two. It is obſerved, that the YENISEY does not afford ſuch plenty of fiſh, nor ſo good

of

of their kinds, as the other rivers of this country. These two rivers, joined, form a mighty ſtream; among the greateſt in the world. I think it larger than the VOLGA at ASTRACHAN. It continues its courſe to the north-weſt, daily augmented by other conſiderable rivers, till it falls into the ICY ſea. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

In the evening, we arrived at the town of YENISEYSKY, where we were met by our friend Mr. BECKLIMISHOFF, the commandant, who conducted us firſt to our lodgings, and then to his own houſe to ſupper. Our barques alſo arriving in the evening, the whole company met again at this place; not a little happy at having ſafely paſſed the water-falls, and eſcaped the dangers to which we had already been expoſed; though we were ſtill above a thouſand leagues from the end of our journey.

As we had no time to loſe, our baggage was landed next day, and the barques diſcharged. The packing the baggage, for land-carriage, took up two days; after which it was tranſported to a place called MAKOFSKY, on the river KEAT, where it was again put on board other barques, which lay ready for that purpoſe. The road lies to the weſtward, moſtly through thick and dark woods; in dry weather, it is tolerably good;

CHAP. XIII. 1721. but in heavy autumnal rains ſcarce paſſable. We ſtaid at YENISEYSKY, through the perſuaſion of our hoſpitable landlord, the commandant, till we heard all was ready at MAKOFSKY.

Having formerly mentioned the pleaſant ſituation of YENISEYSKY, and the fertility of the ſoil about it; I ſhall only add, that the harveſt, at this place, was already far advanced; the barley being all reaped, and the people at work in cutting their oats. This ſeems very early, in a climate ſo far to the north, and muſt proceed from the heat of the ſummer, and the ſoil being fertilized by the nitrous particles of the ſnow, which lies ſo long upon the ground.

Auguſt 2d, we left YENISEYSKY on horſe-back, accompanied by the commandant, who ſtaid with us all night, at a village about ten miles from town. Next morning, we took leave of our friend, and proceeded to MAKOFSKY; where we arrived in the evening, and found the barques ready waiting for us.

The 4th, early in the morning, we went on board, and, puſhing off from the ſhore, rowed down the river KEAT. The water being ſhallow, we made but little way the firſt day; but, as we advanced, it increaſed daily, by rivers and brooks from both ſides. Before

fore we left MAKOFSKY, we laid in proviſions for three weeks, in which time we computed we would enter the OBY; for, during this long navigation, there is not a ſingle houſe, nor village, to be ſeen, except one religious houſe, poſſeſſed by three or four monks, reſembling more an hermitage than a monaſtery. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The KEAT is really a moſt diſmal river. It is not above the flight of an arrow broad, and ſo overſhadowed with tall trees, that you can ſcarce ſee the ſun. The banks are a perfect wilderneſs, and ſo intangled with buſhes, that no creature can paſs along them but wild beaſts; with which theſe woods greatly abound. Near the edge of the river, we found great quantities of black currants upon the buſhes, the largeſt and beſt I ever ſaw. I was told the bears feed much on this fruit.

The river KEAT takes its riſe from a lake at a ſmall diſtance from the YENISEY; and were a canal cut between them, which might eaſily be done, there would be a paſſage, by water, from VERCHATURIA to the borders of CHINA. But his Czariſh Majeſty was, at this time, employed in works of the ſame nature, of much greater importance to his country.

The KEAT runs in a crooked channel, pointing, in

CHAP. XIII. 1721. general, to the weſt. The bottom is ouzy, and ſometimes ſandy. The barques, at firſt, run often a-ground on the ſand banks, and the people were obliged to get into the water, and heave them off, by main force, with levers and ſetting poles; beſides theſe little inconveniencies, we were moleſted with gnats and muskitoes, in this confined place, more than we had formerly been in any part of our journey. They were not, indeed, ſo numerous as they had been in the heat of ſummer; for the nights began to be cold, and the wind northerly. However, no wind could reach us in this cloſe place; and I even wiſhed myſelf in the deſert again, where I might breath the freſh air. In ſhort, the appearance of this place put me in mind of the deſcriptions, given by the poets, of the river STYX.

During our tedious voyage down the dark KEAT, our only diverſion and exerciſe was ſhooting wild-ducks. One day Mr. ISMAYLOFF and myſelf went down the river in a ſmall canoe, rowed by two ſoldiers, at ſome diſtance before the barques. We met with a large flock of ducks, which ſwam up a narrow creek in order to avoid us. We ſailed a little way after them; and, in the mean time, our barques paſſed us, and continued before us till night, ſtill imagining they had

not.

not overtaken us. This day's ſport coſt us dear; for, our rowers being quite fatigued, we were obliged to relieve them, and row in our turns, till at laſt we came up with the barques, both hungry and tired. To make ſome amends, we had a good diſh of wild-ducks for ſupper. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The 20th, we met with two OSTEAKS in their canoes, who had come from the river OBY, to catch fiſh and kill ducks; and had their fiſhing-tackle, and bows and arrows along with them. We were glad to ſee any human creature. We called them on board, and they willingly ſtaid with us till we entered the OBY, and ſupplied us with plenty of fiſh and wild fowl. Theſe were the firſt of the tribe of the OSTEAKS I had ſeen. I ſhall give ſome account of them, when I deſcribe our voyage down that river, on the banks of which they have their habitations.

I formerly mentioned the great abundance of black currants growing on the banks of the KEAT. We found them an excellent and wholeſome fruit; many of our people eat great quantities of them without the leaſt bad effect.

After a tedious voyage, with little variety, we arrived, on the 28th, at a village called KETSKOY, a few miles

CHAP. XIII. 1721. miles diſtant from the OBY. After procuring, at this place, what neceſſaries we wanted, and refreſhing ourſelves a few hours, we continued our voyage, making what way we poſſibly could; for fear of being frozen up, near ſome deſert place on the OBY, before we came to TOBOLSKY, where we intended to land. We had no rain all the time we were upon the KEAT; which was a lucky circumſtance, as our oars were upon deck. Had our barques drawn only about eighteen inches water, as was intended, we ſhould not have been above fourteen days on this river, and thereby ſaved much time and labour; but, coming from CHINA, every perſon in the retinue had a little, which overloaded the veſſels, and retarded their progreſs. The next day, we entered the famous river OBY, which, from its breadth and deepth of water, appears, at leaſt, equal to the VOLGA or YENISEY, and could carry ſhips of conſiderable burden.

The 30th, we reached the firſt town upon the OBY, called NARIM, ſituated on the north bank, about a gunſhot from the river, and a few miles from the mouth of the KEAT. It commands a fine proſpect, up and down the river, and of the woods to the ſouth. Near the town, are a few corn-fields, and garden grounds, abound-

abounding with greens and roots. This place has a small fortreſs governed by a commandant. The inhabitants are generally dealers in furs, which they buy from the OSTEAKS; and either carry them themſelves to the borders of CHINA, where they are exchanged for the commodities of that nation, or diſpoſe of them to merchants going thither. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The 31ſt, we dined with the commandant, and ſpent the reſt of the day in laying in a ſtock of proviſions. We found, at this place, plenty of fine fiſh; particularly ſterlet, ſturgeon, and muckſoon, and many more too tedious to mention; the laſt is peculiar to the OBY and IRTISH.

Here I met with Mr. BORLUTT, a native of FLANDERS, who had been a major in the SWEDISH ſervice, and ſent to this place a priſoner of war. He was a very ingenious gentleman, and had a particular turn for mechanicks. The commandant treated him more like a friend than a priſoner; which, indeed, was the caſe of moſt of thoſe unfortunate gentlemen, whom the fate of war had ſent to this country. His Czariſh Majeſty, well conſidering their circumſtances, ſent them to a plentiful country, where they could live at their eaſe till peace was reſtored.

September

CHAP. XIII. 1721. September 1ſt, having provided ourſelves with neceſſaries, and got new rowers, our former ones returning to YENISEYSKY, from whence they came, in the evening we went again on board; and, putting off in fine calm weather, rowed down the OBY at a great rate; our courſe being much favoured by the rapidity of the current. We paſſed ſeveral villages, and a little monaſtery called TROYTZA. The banks to the north are pretty high, but to the ſouth flat; by which means, on the melting of the ſnow in the ſpring, they are overflowed to a great extent. The river runs towards the north-weſt, with little variation. We continued our voyage night and day, except in great darkneſs, or a gale of contrary wind, when we were obliged to ly by in ſome creek.

The OSTEAKS, I mentioned above, differ from all the other tribes of natives in SIBERIA, both in complexion and language. Many of them are fair, reſembling the people of FINLAND, and they have many FINNISH words in their language. Their manner of life is nearly the ſame with that of the TONGUSE, who border with them to the eaſtward. In ſummer, they live in the woods, in huts covered with birchen bark. In winter, they dig pits, acroſs which they lay ſtakes,

above

above them ſpread earth, to keep them warm. They have a fire in the middle, and a hole in the roof to let out the ſmoke. During this ſeaſon they live chiefly on fiſh, dried and ſmoked, wild fowl, or what elſe they catch in hunting. Many of them are ſtout fellows, fit for any ſervice. Two of them, with their bows and arrows, a ſhort ſpear, and a little dog, will attack the greateſt bear. They are dexterous archers and fiſhermen. We had always a number of them, in canoes, round our barques, who ſupplied us with plenty of fiſh and wild fowl, of various ſorts, at an eaſy rate. Give them only a little tobacco, and a dram of brandy, and they ask no more, not knowing the uſe of money. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The OSTEAKS, though a ſavage people in their manner of life, are far from being barbarous; for a ſingle RUSSIAN will travel about all their abodes, in order to purchaſe furs, without fear of any violence. They are alſo remarkable for their honeſty; and the ſmall tribute of furs, which they pay annually to his Czariſh Majeſty, they bring punctually to the place appointed.

In ſummer, they wear nothing but coats and ſhort drawers, made of fiſh-skins, dreſſed after their faſhion; but, in winter, are clothed with skins of deer and other wild beaſts.

CHAP. XIII. 1721. They have no cattle except rain-deer, which ſupply their children with milk; and are, beſides, of great ſervice to them on many accounts.

As to their religion, they are ignorant heathens, like the reſt of the natives of SIBERIA. They have many both male and female ſhamans, who are in great eſteem among them. Theſe ſhamans have many ſmall images, or rather blocks of wood, rudely cut with a knife or hatchet, repreſenting a human figure, dreſſed up in rags of various colours, by which they pretend to foretel future events, ſuch as the good or bad luck of thoſe that go a-hunting. But theſe are no better than others of the ſame ſpecies, already mentioned, who impoſe on the ignorance or credulity of their neighbours.

From what I have now and formerly ſaid concerning theſe poor ſavage tribes, it will appear that they are involved in the moſt profound ignorance. Their manners are ſo rude, and minds uncultivated, that many of them ſeem ſtupid, and altogether unmindful of any thing beyond their preſent employment. I have, however, met with men of reflection among them, who agreed with the reſt of mankind, in acknowledging one great

great almighty Creator of this world, and of every thing else. CHAP. XIII. 1721.

The archbiſhop of TOBOLSKY has, of late, baptiſed many of the OSTEAKS, and other natives, in a tour he made through SIBERIA with that view; and it is to be hoped his ſucceſſors will follow his laudable example.

CHAPTER XIV.

Our arrival at the town of SURGUTE, *our journey thence to* MOSCO, *ſome account of the creature called mammon, &c.*

AFTER a voyage of ten days from the town of NARIM, during which little remarkable happened, we arrived, on the 11th of September, at another town, called SURGUTE, ſituated on the north bank of the OBY, and defended by a ſmall fort. The inhabitants, like the people of NARIM, are moſtly traders in furs. The adjacent country, on both ſides of the river, is overgrown with dark and tall woods, where there is no cultivated ground, except a few gardens. Bread is got, at a ſmall charge, by water-carriage, from TOBOLSKY, and other places on the river IRTISH.

In the banks of the OBY, about this place, are found great quantities of that kind of ivory called, in this

CHAP. XIV. 1721. country, mammon's horn. Some of it, alſo, is found on the banks of the VOLGA. Mammon's horn reſembles, in ſhape and ſize, the teeth of a large elephant. The vulgar really imagine mammon to be a creature living in marſhes and under ground; and entertain many ſtrange notions concerning it. The TARTARS tell many fables of its having been ſeen alive. But to me it appears that this horn is the tooth of a large elephant. When, indeed, or how, theſe teeth came ſo far to the northward, where no elephants can, at preſent, ſubſiſt during the winter-ſeaſon, is what I am unable to determine. They are commonly found in the banks of rivers which have been waſhed by floods. The commandant of this place had his entry ornamented with ſeveral very large ones, and made me a preſent of one of them.

I have been told by TARTARS in the BARABA, that they have ſeen this creature, called mammon, at the dawn of day, near lakes and rivers; but, that on diſcovering them, the mammon immediately tumbles into the water, and never appears in the day-time; they ſay it is about the ſize of a large elephant, with a monſtrous large head and horns, with which he makes his way in marſhy places, and under ground, where he conceals him-

himſelf till night. I only mention theſe things as the reports of a ſuperſtitious and ignorant people. CHAP. XIV. 1721.

I have obſerved, in moſt of the towns, we paſſed, between TOBOLSKY and YENESIESKY, many of theſe mammons horns, ſo called by the natives; ſome of them very entire and freſh, like the beſt ivory, in every circumſtance, excepting only the colour, which was of a yellowiſh hue; others of them mouldered away at the ends, and, when ſawn aſunder, prettily clouded. The people make ſnuff boxes, combs, and diverſe ſorts of turnery ware, of them.

They are found in the banks of all the great rivers in SIBERIA, weſtward of IENCOUSKY, when the floods have waſhed down the banks, by the melting of the ſnow, in the ſpring. I have ſeen of them weighing above one hundred pounds ENGLISH. [I brought a large tooth, or mammon's horn, with me to ENGLAND, and preſented it to my worthy friend Sir HANS SLOANE, who gave it a place in his celebrated Muſeum; and was of opinion, alſo, that it was the tooth of an elephant. This tooth was found in the river OBY, at a place called SURGUTE.]

The 12th, after we had been ſupplied with a freſh ſtock of proviſions, and freſh rowers, we proceeded towards

CHAP. XIV. 1721. wards the next ſtage, called SAMAROFSKY-YAMM, near the conflux of the OBY and IRTISH. The wind being contrary, we made but ſlow progreſs. The near approach of winter, which uſually begins about the firſt of October, made us haſten forward as faſt as poſſible.

Next day, the wind being eaſterly, we hoiſted our ſails, and run along at a great rate; and, the 14th, arrived at a ſmall village on the north ſhore. The ſouth bank ſtill continued low and flat. At this village we ſaw great quantities of wild geeſe, picked, and ſmoked, and hung in ſhades, for winter-proviſions. We had ſome of them dreſſed; but I cannot much praiſe them for agreeable food. The people of this place catch vaſt numbers of them in day-nets, more on account of the down and feathers, than of their fleſh, which is but of ſmall value. We let our barques proceed; and detained a boat to follow them, as ſoon as we had ſeen the method of catching the wild geeſe. The ſportſman conducted us into a ſpacious open plain, encompaſſed with woods and water. Here he had his large nets, with wide maſhes, ſpread; and a ſmall hut, made of green branches, to conceal himſelf. Upon the graſs were ſcattered about a ſcore of geeſe-skins ſtuffed, ſome of them ſtanding, others ſitting, in natural poſtures.

ſtures. As ſoon as he ſees a flock flying over his head, he calls, with a bit of birchen bark in his mouth, exactly like the wild geeſe. On hearing the call, they take a turn round, and then alight among the ſtuffed skins; which being perceived by the ſportſman, he immediately draws a ſtring, and claps the nets over the whole flock, or as many of them as are within their reach. The geeſe always alight and riſe with their heads to windward; to prevent, therefore, ſuch as eſcape the day-net from flying off, he has a deep long net placed, on tall ſlender poles, to windward, which intangles great numbers in their riſing. I am perſuaded this method might eaſily be practiſed, in other parts of the world, to greater advantage; though, I believe, there are no where ſuch quantities of waterfowl, eſpecially geeſe of different kinds, as in theſe northern climates; where, free from annoyance, they bring forth their young among woods and lakes, and, at the approach of winter, fly off to the CASPIAN ſea, and other ſouthern regions. CHAP. XIV. 1721.

There is here one ſpecies of geeſe, called kazarky, of a ſize leſs than the common wild gooſe, having beautiful ſcarlet ſpots about the head, and ſome feathers of the ſame colour in its wings. Of this ſort I ſaw great

flocks

CHAP. XIV. 1721. flocks about the CASPIAN ſea in winter. Beſides theſe, there are numbers of ſwans, and all ſorts of water-fowl natural to the climate.

The woods are ſtored with game, and various ſorts of wild fowl; particularly, the coc-limoge, the heath-cock, and ſeveral others too tedious to mention. The manner in which the coc-limoge is caught, by the OSTEAKS, is ſomewhat curious.

They make a paling, about four or five feet high, running from any wood, along a ſandy bank, to the edge of the river, having the ſtakes ſet ſo cloſe that the fowls cannot paſs between them. In this paling they leave openings, at certain diſtances, large enough to afford a paſſage for theſe birds; and, rather than take the wing, the cock will ſeek a paſſage from one end of the hedge to the other. In theſe openings are ſet ſprings, on bent branches, which, as ſoon as touched, fly up, and catch the fowl, either by the neck, or feet. The OSTEAKS brought us theſe, and other wild fowl, in great plenty.

The 15th, in fine weather, we continued our voyage; uſing our ſails or oars, by turns, as circumſtances obliged us. Little material happened till the 19th in the evening, when we left the OBY, and entered the river

IRTISH;

IRTISH; and, night coming on, we put aſhore, where we ſtaid till next morning. On entering the IRTISH, we had a ſtrong current againſt our courſe, which had been down the ſtream, in all the different rivers, from SELINGINSKY to this place. CHAP. XIV. 1721.

Before I proceed farther, I ſhall take a view of the famous OBY. It is one of the largeſt rivers in the world; and runs as long a courſe as any in SIBERIA, or perhaps in any other quarter of the globe. It riſes in the deſert, ſeveral hundred miles ſouthward of the BARABA; and is daily augmented, by many ſtreams of different names, till it reaches a place called BELOGARSKY, where it takes the name of OBY, at the conflux of two large rivers, the ALLEY and the TZARITT. Theſe rivers joined form the OBY. The OBY ſignifies *both* in the RUSSIAN language. But I am of opinion, this river had that name long before SIBERIA was known to the RUSSIANS; as the natives ſtill give it that name.

In going eaſtward, we paſſed the OBY upon the ice, at a place called TZAUSKY OSTROGUE; where it made no great appearance, in compariſon of what it does after receiving the rivers TOM, TZULIM, KEAT, IRTISH, and many others; when, indeed, it may be reckoned in the number of the largeſt rivers in the world. It

CHAP. XIV. points generally to the north, with various windings,
1721. till it meets the KEAT, when it turns to the north-weſt; and runs in that direction many miles, till, meeting with the IRTISH, it turns ſhort, in a rapid current, towards the pole, ſwallowing up many rivers and brooks in its courſe; and, at laſt, it diſcharges itſelf into the NORTHERN ocean, at a great bay called OBSKAYA-GUBA, or the LIPS of the OBY.

Few rivers in the world contain greater plenty and variety of fiſh than the OBY. The banks to the ſouth produce woods in abundance, interſperſed with corn-fields, and good paſturage. I have been informed, that in theſe parts are rich mines of copper and iron, and even ſilver.

At the conflux of the OBY and IRTISH are ſeveral large iſlands; and farther north, ſeveral villages; but only one town of any note, called BERCOSA, ſituated on the left hand.

I may here obſerve, that geographers generally agree, that a line drawn from the place where the river TANAIS, now called DON, diſcharges itſelf into the ſea of AZOF, or the BLACK ſea, to the mouth of the OBY, is the proper boundary betwixt EUROPE and ASIA.

The 20th, early in the morning, we ſhoved off from the

the ſhore, and made the beſt of our way up the IRTISH. CHAP. XIV.
In the evening, we reached SAMARIOFSKY-YAMM, where 1721.
we lodged this night.

Next day, having taken on board freſh labourers, and the wind being northerly, and very cold, we put off in haſte, hoiſted ſail, and went along at a great rate. The wind continuing from this point, was a certain ſign that winter was at no great diſtance; and, that we might ſoon expect to be met by ſhoals of floating ice.

The 22d, the north wind ſtill continued very ſtrong, to our great joy. For, although there are many villages on the IRTISH, we dreaded the being frozen up near ſome deſert place.

Next day, there fell a little ſnow, which ſoftened the coldneſs of the air; but, at the ſame time, the wind unfortunately chopped about to the weſtward, and retarded our progreſs.

The 24th, we continued our voyage; and, next day, the wind again becoming northerly, we uſed our ſails all that day and night. We proceeded, without any thing material happening, till the 29th, when we reached DEMIANSKY, a town ſtanding on the eaſtern bank.

Next day, we ſet out immediately, after taking in

CHAP. XIV. freſh rowers. The fields were now covered with ſnow,
1721. and the froſt ſo ſtrong, that the ice began to float in the river; and we expected every day to be frozen up.

Theſe ſigns, of approaching winter, influenced Mr. ISMAYLOF to leave the barques, to follow as ſhould be poſſible for them, while himſelf made the beſt of his way to TOBOLSKY, in a ſmall boat. Accordingly, carrying me along with him, we immediately ſet out towards that place.

October the firſt, we continued rowing along, near the banks, and took in freſh rowers as occaſion offered. The river was full of great ſhoals of ice, the froſt ſtrong, and much ſnow. In the evening, we arrived, cold and wet, at a ſmall village, where we lodged in a warm room, about fifty verſt from TOBOLSKY.

Next day, the river was ſo covered with ice that we could proceed no farther in our boats; but luckily, in the night, there fell ſnow enough for ſledges. We ſoon got horſes, and ſuch open ſledges as the place afforded, and, in the evening, arrived ſafe at the city of TOBOLSKY. We went immediately to the palace of Prince ALEXIE MICHAYLOVITZ CHERKASKY, the governor, who was an intimate friend of the ambaſſador. This Prince was much eſteemed for his capacity; as well

well as his great probity and honour. We ſupped with him, and then retired to our lodgings; but could not avoid commiſerating the fate of our fellow travellers, labouring with the ice, and afraid of being frozen up every minute. CHAP. XIV. 1721.

The 3d, we ſent ſome ſoldiers to meet the barques, and aſſiſt them in coming up the river. And on the 5th, they arrived ſafe at TOBOLSKY; where they were, next day, diſcharged.

We were obliged to ſtay here for the falling of the ſnow, in order to proceed on ſledges, the common method of travelling in winter. At this place, we thought ourſelves at home, having good lodgings, good company, and plenty of proviſions; ſo that we waited patiently for the ſetting in of winter; beſides, we had now a frequented road, lying through a well inhabited country, all the way to MOSCO.

During our ſtay at TOBOLSKY, I was informed, that a large troop of gipſies had been lately at that place, to the number of ſixty and upwards, conſiſting of men, women, and children. The RUSSIANS call theſe vagabonds tziggany. Their ſorry baggage was carried on horſes and aſſes. The arrival of ſo many ſtrangers being reported to Mr. PETROFF SOLOVOY, the vice governor;

CHAP. XIV. vernor; he ſent for ſome of the chief of the gang, and
1721. demanded whither they were going? they anſwered him, to CHINA; upon which he told them, he could not permit them to proceed any farther eaſtward, as they had no paſsport; and ordered them to return to the place whence they came. It ſeems theſe people had roamed, in ſmall parties, during the ſummer ſeaſon, croſs the vaſt countries between POLAND and this place; ſubſiſting themſelves on what they could find, and on ſelling trinkets, and telling fortunes to the country people. But TOBOLSKY, being the place of rendezvous, was the end of their long journey eaſtwards; and they, with no ſmall regret, were obliged to turn their faces to the weſt again.

Before I leave this new world, as it may be called, of SIBERIA, I think it well deſerves a few general remarks; beſides the particulars mentioned in my journal.

This vaſt extent of eaſtern continent is bounded by RUSSIA to the weſt; by GREAT TARTARY to the ſouth; on the eaſt and north by the reſpective oceans; its circumference is not eaſy to aſcertain. Foreigners commonly are terrified at the very name of SIBERIA, or SIBIR as it is ſometimes called; but, from what I have

ſaid

ſaid concerning it, I preſume it will be granted, that it is by no means ſo bad as is generally imagined. On the contrary, the country is really excellent, and abounds with all things neceſſary for the uſe of man and beaſt. There is no want of any thing, but people to cultivate a fruitful ſoil, well watered by many of the nobleſt rivers in the world; and theſe ſtored with variety of ſuch fine fiſh, as are ſeldom found in other countries. As to fine woods, furniſhed with all ſorts of game and wild fowl, no country can exceed it.

SIBERIA is generally plain, ſometimes varied with riſing grounds; but contains no high mountains, and few hills, except towards the borders of CHINA, where you find many pleaſant hills and fruitful valleys.

Conſidering the extent of this country, and the many advantages it poſſeſſes, I cannot help being of opinion, that it is ſufficient to contain all the nations in EUROPE; where they might enjoy a more comfortable life than many of them do at preſent. For my part, I think, that, had a perſon his liberty and a few friends, there are few places where he could ſpend life more agreeably than in ſome parts of SIBERIA.

Towards the north, indeed, the winter is long, and extremely

CHAP. XIV. 1721. extremely cold. There are alſo many dreary waſtes, and deep woods, terminated only by great rivers, or the ocean; but theſe I would leave to the preſent inhabitants, the honeſt OSTEAKS, and TONGUSES, and others like them; where, free from ambition and avarice, they ſpend their lives in peace and tranquillity. I am even perſuaded, that theſe poor people would not change their ſituation, and manner of life, for the fineſt climate, and all the riches of the eaſt; for I have often heard them ſay, that GOD, who had placed them in this country, knew what was beſt for them, and they were ſatisfied with their lot.

During our ſtay at TOBOLSKY, a meſſenger arrived from court, with the glad tidings of peace being concluded between his Czariſh Majeſty and the crown of SWEDEN, after a deſtructive war, which had raged above twenty years. This was very agreeable news to every body, particularly to the officers who had remained ſo long in captivity. The peace was proclaimed with firing of guns, and other rejoicings uſual on ſuch occaſions.

November 18th, all the roads being now firm, and fit for ſledges, we left TOBOLSKY in a ſtrong froſt. As we returned by the ſame road we went to the eaſtward, which

which I have already deſcribed, I ſhall not repeat the particulars, but only name the towns through which we paſſed, viz. TUMEEN, EPANTSHIN, VERCHATURIA, and SOLIKAMSKY. The weather being exceſſively cold, we remained two days at this place. From thence we came to KAY-GOROD, then to KLINOFF; from which, inſtead of going towards CAZAN, we proceeded ſtraight through the woods towards the town of NISHNA-NOVOGOROD, ſituated at the conflux of the VOLGA and OCKA. This road is neareſt, but very rough and narrow in many places, the country being overgrown with large tall woods, of different kinds, according to the nature of the ſoil. The principal inhabitants are the TZEREMISH, who afford but indifferent accommodation for travellers; however, the people are very courteous and hoſpitable. Among them are ſcattered a few RUSS villages, and a very few RUSS towns of ſmall note; for which reaſon, I ſhall only mention the names of ſuch as lay in our road from KLINOFF to KUSMA-DAMIANSKO, (which laſt place is ſituated on the eaſt bank of the river VOLGA) viz. BISTRITSKY, a large village; ORLOFF, a ſmall town; YURIEFSKY, a village; KOTELNITZY, a ſmall town; a village called TZORNO-RETZKY; a large village called VOSKRESENSKY; YARANSKY, a ſmall town; TZA-REVO-

CHAP. XIV. 1721.

CHAP. XIV. REVO-SANCHURSKY, another ſmall town; SHUMETREY, a village. Beſides theſe, and ſome others, we paſſed through many villages, inhabited by TZEREMISHIAN and TZOOWASHIAN TARTARS, to mention which would be too tedious. Theſe people, having deſtroyed the woods about their villages, live much at their eaſe, have plenty of corn and cattle, and great numbers of bee-hives, whereby they furniſh the markets with great quantities of honey and bees-wax. They alſo furniſhed us with changes of horſes, whenever we had occaſion for them; but their tackling of harneſs, &c. is ſo bad, that much time was loſt in accommodating them to our heavy carriages; ſo that we thought ourſelves happy when we met with RUSSIAN villages, which are far better provided in that reſpect, and more accuſtomed to travelling, than thoſe poor people, who never go far from their own home.

1721.

After a tedious journey, we came out of the woods, to the VOLGA, and travelled along upon the ice; which, in ſome places, was not very firm. In the evening we reached NISHNA-NOVOGOROD; where we ſtaid ſome days to refreſh ourſelves, and kept our CHRISTMAS with the commandant.

We proceeded again on the 28th, and, little material

rial happening, arrived ſafe at the capital city of MOSCO, on the 5th day of January, 1722; where we found his Czariſh Majeſty, and all the court, who had lately arrived from ST. PETERSBURG; and preparations were making for grand fire-works, triumphal arches, and other marks of joy, on account of the peace. With which I ſhall conclude my journal.

I THINK it will not be unacceptable to the reader, if I ſubjoin a liſt of the places and diſtances between ST. PETERSBURG and PEKIN. They are as follows.

It is to be noted, that the diſtances between ST. PETERSBURG and TOBOLSKY in SIBERIA, are all meaſured verſts; each verſt being 500 RUSS fathoms, each fathom conſiſting of 7 feet ENGLISH meaſure; ſo that a RUSSIAN verſt meaſures exactly 1166⅔ yards.

	Verſts.		Verſts.
From St. Petersburg		Brought up	141
to Yeſhore	35	to Podberezwa	23
Toſſinsky-Yam	23	Novogorod	22
Lubany	26	Bronitza	35
Chudova	32	Zaitſoff	30
Spaskoy Poliſte	25	Kriſtitskom	31
To be carried up	141	To be carried over	282

	Verſts.
Brought over	282
to Yazhetbeetſach	39
Zemnigorskom	23
Edrovo	22
Kotelofsky	35
Viſhny-Volotſhoke	36
Vidropusko	33
Torſhoke	36
Medna	33
Tweer	28
Gorodna	31
Zavidova	27
Klinn	27
Peſhka	30
Tſhorny Graz	24
City of Moſco	28
Novo-Derevenoy	27
Bunkovo	26
Kyrzatsky	29
Lipnach	28
Undola	17
Volodimer	22
To be carried up	883

	Verſts.
Brought up	883
to Selo-Sudogda	34
Moſhkach	30
Selo-Dratſhevo	26
Murom	30
Selo-Monachovo	25
Selo-Pagoſty	29
Selo-Bogoroditzky	39
Niſhna Novogorod	28
Zyminka	25
Selo-Tatintza	31
Belozerika	35
Fokina	29
Selo-Sumkach	34
Koſma-Damiansko	20
Bolſhoy Rutky	10
Kumea	50
Shumetrey	30
Zarevo-Santzursky	30
Potavinoy-Vrague	47
Yaranskey	29
Selo-Voskreſensky	34
To be carried over	1528

	Verſts.
Brought over	1528
to Tſhorna-Retzka	47
Kotelnizy	46
Yuriofsky	20
Orloff	26
Selo-Biſtritz	21
Klinoff	30
Slobodsky	28
Selo-Prokofiefsky	30
Selo-Solovetzkoy	33
Troitska-monaſtery.	22
Kruto-Gorsky	25
Katharinsky-monaſtery	25
Tikofsky	35
Leonsky	25
Kay-Gorod	35
Reka Volva	34
Koriſh Retska Bereſofsky	25
Selo Yſinofsky	30
To be carried up	2065

	Verſts.
Brought up	2065
to Zezefsky	15
Selo-Koſſinsky	36
Logginoff	32
Selo-Syrinsky	28
Nikonoff	25
Town of Sollikamsky	30
Martinskoy	25
Yanvey	35
Moltzanoff	35
From Moltzanoff to Verkaturia are five ſtages, making	181
thence to Saldinskaya Pogoſtia	27
Maggnevoy	46
Fominoy	28
Babichinoy	53
Turinsky	53
Slattkoy	50
Selo-Roſhdeſvinsky	50
To be carried over	2815

	Verſts.		Verſts.
Brought over	2815	Brought up	2978
Tumeen	51	Backſarino	34
Soſſnovoy	46	Sheſtakovo	26
Pokrofska-Slaboda	31	Dechterevo	39
Iskinskoy	35	City of Tobolsky	43
To be carried up	2978		3120

From St. Petersburg	to	Moſco	734
From Moſco	to	Kuſma-Damiansko	564
From Kuſma-Damiansko	to	Zarevo-Santzursky	120
From Zarevo-Santzursky	to	Sollikamsky	813
From Sollikamsky	to	Tobolsky	888
			3119

It will be obſerved, that, in our journey outwards to CHINA, we went by CAZAN; which muſt make the diſtance, we travelled, between ST. PETERSBURG and TOBOLSKY, more than the above, (which is the ſhorteſt road,) by, at leaſt, 200 verſts.

The

The route continued from TOBOLSKY, eaſtward, down the river IRTISH, and up the rivers OBY and KEAT, by water.

From Tobolsky	Verſts.	
to Samariofsky-Yamm	570	
the town of Surgute	262	
the town of Narim	590	
the town of Makofsky, up the river Keat	1480	
by land, to Yeniſeysky	92	
to Elimsky, along the river Tongusky	627	
to Irkutsky	450	
croſs the Baykall lake, to Selinginsky	394	
to Saratzine, the boundary between Ruſſia and China,	104	
to the river Tola	467	
to the wall of China, croſs the Hungry Stepp, or Deſert,	1212	
to the city of Pekin	200	
From Tobolsky to Pekin		6448
From St. Petersburg to Tobolsky		3119
		9567

N.B. The

N. B. The verſts between TOBOLSKY and PEKIN are computed, which generally exceed the meaſured verſt.

It will be noted, that the route above-recited is that by which we returned from CHINA.

JOUR-

JOURNAL

OF THE

RESIDENCE

OF

Mr. DE LANGE,

AGENT OF HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY

OF ALL THE RUSSIAS,

PETER THE FISRT,

AT THE

COURT OF PEKIN,

DURING THE YEARS 1721, & 1722.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH,

PRINTED AT LEYDEN BY

ABRAHAM KALLEWIER,

IN MDCCXXVI.

TRANSLATION

OF THE

EDITOR'S PREFACE

TO THE

READER.

THIS Journal is a very curious and an authentick piece, and certainly merits the attention of the publick, as well for its uſe as the novelty of the ſubject it treats of.

As the world is not ſo ſufficiently informed of what paſſes in thoſe diſtant countries, as to form a tolerable judgment of what the court of RUSSIA may have to do with that of CHINA, I am now about to give a ſuccinct relation thereof to the reader, that it may ſerve him as an introduction to the work.

It is now well known, that the frontiers of SIBERIA are contiguous to thoſe of CHINA; for this reaſon, it is natural to think, that the court of RUSSIA ſhould have more frequent correſpondence with that of CHINA, than any other court of EUROPE. Nevertheleſs, this correſpondence, between the two courts, is of no ancient date; as it did not commence but ſince the

MONGALL TARTARS made themſelves maſters of CHINA, about the year 1640; for it was about that time that the RUSSIANS, after being poſſeſſed of SIBERIA from the latter end of the ſixteenth century, began to ſpread themſelves over that vaſt country; not having met with the leaſt reſiſtance from the ancient inhabitants of thoſe parts; till, at laſt, they came to eſtabliſh themſelves about the lake BAYKALL, and the river AMOOR, thereby becoming near neighbours to the MONGALL TARTARS; by intercourſe with them the RUSSIANS ſoon came to underſtand, that their nation had poſſeſſed themſelves of CHINA; and that it was the Prince who was actually their Chan, who filled, at that time, the throne of CHINA.

The court of RUSSIA was not ignorant of the extreme opulence of the empire of CHINA; and, apprized that the diſtance from SIBERIA could not be great, reſolved to try if they could not draw ſome advantages from that diſcovery, by eſtabliſhing a regular commerce between SIBERIA and CHINA; promiſing themſelves no leſs, than to draw into RUSSIA, from that empire, a great part of its riches. For this purpoſe, the court of RUSSIA ſent, ſucceſſively, ſeveral ambaſſadors, or envoys, to CHINA; who ſucceeded ſo well, that the

CHINESE

CHINESE, at length, conſented to the entry of the caravans into their dominions, from SIBERIA, on conditions very advantageous to RUSSIA.

During theſe tranſactions, the RUSSIANS daily gained ground, on the frontiers of the MONGALL TARTARS; and even made no ſcruple, when they thought fit, of eſtabliſhing themſelves on their territories, with a deſign to approach on one ſide, along the river AMOOR, towards the ORIENTAL ſea; and on the other ſide, along the river SELINGA, towards the frontiers of CHINA.

In the mean time, the new government of CHINA was not long of comprehending, that all theſe new ſettlements, which the RUSSIANS made upon the frontiers of the MONGALLS, would, in time, render their power too formidable to the ſubjects of CHINA; and might come at laſt to be very dangerous to the repoſe of CHINA itſelf, in caſe any miſunderſtandings between the two nations ſhould ariſe. On theſe conſiderations, they reſolved to oppoſe ſettlement to ſettlement; and to build ſome towns, and villages on the frontiers of the MONGALL TARTARS, at ſome diſtance from the laſt ſettlements of the RUSSIANS; in order thereby to prevent their penetrating further into the country,

country, to the prejudice of the TARTAR ſubjects of CHINA.

In conſequence of this reſolution, the CHINESE built, about the year 1670, the towns of MERGEEN and NAUN, and the borough of XIXIGAN, with ſeveral other boroughs, and villages thereabouts; which they peopled with colonies of MONGALLS, ſubjects of CHINA.

Thence aroſe diſputes between the two empires, on the ſubject of their frontiers. And in place of the negotiations being confined to affairs of commerce, and mutual proteſtations of amity and friendſhip, on one ſide and the other; the grand object of all their aims, came now to be the accommodation of the affair of the frontiers, and the regulation of limits between the two empires. But in as much as one would preſerve to themſelves the right of doing as they thought fit; and the other would, at all hazards, keep them from doing what they thought dangerous; there aroſe a great coolneſs between them; which came to blows in the years 1684 and 1685. It is true that they laboured inceſſantly, both on the one ſide and on the other, for a re-eſtabliſhment of good harmony between the two nations; to this end there were held two different congreſſes, at the town of NERCHINSKY, between

the

the plenipotentiaries of RUSSIA, and thoſe of CHINA. But thoſe gentlemen met with ſo many difficulties, in reconciling their different ſentiments and intereſts, that they were obliged to ſeparate without ſucceſs. At laſt, F. GERBILLON, a Jeſuit, returned again to the town of NERCHINSKY, in quality of plenipotentiary of the court of CHINA; and there, in 1689, ſigned a treaty of peace, and perpetual alliance, between the two empires; which was afterwards ratified, in the uſual forms, by both the courts.

That treaty was not very advantageous to the RUSSIANS; becauſe it ſet bounds to their eſtabliſhments on theſe frontiers, which was a very diſagreeable article. And as they believed the CHINESE would not regard it very ſtrictly, provided they did not advance further on the ſide of the SELINGA, and the towns they had lately built to the ſouthward of the frontiers; the RUSSIANS again began to make new ſettlements along the river AMOOR; and, at laſt, to build along the ſouth bank of that river, thirty leagues beyond their limits, a town they called ALBAZIN; in hopes that the CHINESE could not be without SIBERIAN furs, and would rather chuſe to wink at theſe enterpriſes, than enter into a new war. But they were quite miſtaken in their calcula-

calculation; for the MONGALLS furniſhed ſuch quantities of furs to CHINA, from the time they had orders from the Chan to ſpread themſelves along the banks of the AMOOR, that the CHINESE began to perceive that they could be ſufficiently ſupplied with furs, without thoſe from SIBERIA. And in theſe ſentiments they ſpoke freely their thoughts of theſe new enterpriſes of the RUSSIANS.

In the mean time, the RUSSIANS gave them good words, and fair promiſes; but continued to carry on their point, flattering themſelves, that they might find ſome favourable opportunity of pacifying them. Nevertheleſs, the CHINESE growing doubtful of the RUSSIANS complying with their demands, which they thought well founded, at length, had recourſe to force; and, in the year 1715, made the MONGALLS, *ſubjects* to CHINA, take arms, and laid ſiege to the town of ALBAZIN, the place which was the principal ground of their complaints. This ſiege continued three years; and as the late PETER the great was occupied in his grand deſigns to the weſtward, he would not continue the quarrel with CHINA. Thus they let the town fall into the hands of the MONGALLS; and agreed to a new proviſional treaty with the court of PEKIN. But as other differences

ferences, on the frontiers, ſtill ſubſiſted, the court of RUSSIA ſent again, in 1719, an envoy extraordinary to PEKIN, to regulate entirely what remained to be adjuſted between the two empires; and ſeeing, that by means of theſe differences, the commerce of the caravans was much leſſened, the true object of his negotiation was to re-eſtabliſh that commerce; and, to that end, to try to induce the court of CHINA to conſent to the reſidence of an agent, from RUSSIA, at the court of PEKIN, who might take care to watch over the affairs of the caravan, and ſo preſerve a good underſtanding between the two empires. The envoy of RUSSIA, having happily executed the laſt part of his commiſſion, left, at his departure from PEKIN, Mr. de LANGE, as agent of RUSSIA at the court of PEKIN, who was the author of the following journal.

The publick is obliged for this tract to a foreign miniſter, who reſided many years at the court of RUSSIA; and who permitted it to be communicated to the publick. But, to make the reading of it more agreeable, and more uſeful to the world, it was thought fit to add ſome little remarks in the places which required elucidation; that nothing might be wanting to the reader on ſo intereſting a ſubject.

JOURNAL OF MR. DE LANGE, &c.

MR. DE ISMAYLOFF, ambaſſador and envoy extraordinary of his Czariſh Majeſty, having fixed his departure from PEKIN to be on the 2d of March, after having finiſhed his negotiations at the court of CHINA in the beſt manner he poſſibly could *, I took the reſolution of accompanying him to the wall of CHINA; but the gentlemen of the miniſtry thought proper to refuſe me a paſſport; pretending, that, as I was ordered by his Czariſh Majeſty to reſide at the court of the Chan †, it was neceſſary that I ſhould have permiſſion of the Bogdoi-Chan himſelf; not only for going as far as the grand wall, but alſo, for every time that I would go to ſtay a night without the walls of PEKIN; to the

* Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, a gentleman of great merit, and a captain in the regiment of the PREOBRASCHINSKY guards, was ſent, in the year 1719, by the late Emperor PETER the Great, to CHINA, with the character of ambaſſador and envoy extraordinary, to renew the treaties between RUSSIA and CHINA; and to endeavour to bring the court of PEKIN to agree to a regulated free commerce with RUSSIA.

† All the TARTARS give to their reigning princes the title of Chan; and, as the houſe, which at preſent fills the throne of CHINA, is come from that branch of Pagan TARTARS, known to us by the name of ORIENTAL MONGALLS, the Emperors of CHINA conform themſelves to the eſtabliſhed cuſtom of their nation; preſerving, to this time, the title of Chan. *Vide Hiſt. Genealog. des* TARTARES.

MARCH. 1721. intent, that the court might always be aſſured that no ill accident ſhould happen to me, being a foreigner *. And, as the Bogdoi-Chan had already quitted his reſidence of PEKIN, to take the diverſion of hunting, it was not without a good deal of trouble that I obtained permiſſion to accompany Mr. de ISMAYLOFF as far as CZAMPINSA, which is a town 60 ly † diſtant from PEKIN, from whence I returned, being eſcorted by a clerk of the council for the affairs of the MONGALLS, and ſome ſoldiers; and thus came back to PEKIN on the 6th.

The 7th, early in the morning, I ſaw enter the court-yard of my houſe a man who had the appearance of a poor beggar; he brought with him ſome poor ſtarved fowls, and ſalted cabbage, together with ſome pots of taraſſun, which is a fermented liquor, made of grain, and what the CHINESE drink inſtead of wine, making it warm before they drink it. This man, having ſet it

* Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, at his departure from PEKIN, left, by virtue of his inſtructions, Mr. de LANGE, in quality of agent of RUSSIA, to treat of, and bring to a concluſion, a regulation of commerce, and the eſtabliſhment of an eaſy correſpondence, between the two empires; and although the CHINESE miniſtry oppoſed, moſt ſtrenuouſly, the reſidence of the ſaid agent at their court, on pretence that it was contrary to the fundamental conſtitutions of the empire; yet the ſaid ambaſſador knew ſo well how to take his meaſures, that the Bogdoi-Chan gave his conſent to it, notwithſtanding all the intrigues of the miniſtry to the contrary.

† One *ly* of CHINA is exactly 360 geometrical paces.

all

all down in my court-yard, was returning; when I ordered him to be called back, to inform me of the meaning of his ſo doing. Upon which he told me, " That it was part of the proviſions he had bought for " me, by order of the college who have the charge " of the Emperor's magazines of proviſions; but, that " not being able to bring all at once, he was going to " fetch the reſt." Whereupon, being informed by him what his occupation was, I underſtood, " That he had " made a contract, with the ſaid college, to furniſh me, " every nine days, with a certain quantity of proviſions " for my houſe." Upon which I ordered him to take every thing away that he ſaid he had bought for me; and to bring no more to my houſe, till I ſhould receive previous information, from the council for foreign affairs, how much I was daily to receive by order of the Bogdoi-Chan, and through whoſe hands I was to receive them. MARCH. 1721.

Whereupon I ſent to let the Mandarins (who were appointed to propoſe to the council what might regard me) know what had occurred with this man, who came, in the above manner, to bring me proviſions on the part of the Bogdoi-Chan; and, alſo, that I ſhould always moſt reſpectfully receive whatever the Bogdoi-Chan,

MARCH. 1721. Chan, from his friendſhip for his Czariſh Majeſty, ſhould order for my ſubſiſtence, in caſe it was ſent me in a proper manner; at the ſame time, deſiring them to acquaint me with the particulars of what the court had ordered for my ſubſiſtence. Whereupon thoſe gentlemen ſent me the following anſwer, "That I ſhould re-"ceive the ſame allowance which I had received before, "during the reſidence of the envoy extraordinary at "this court; and that they had already made an agree-"ment to deliver my allowance regularly." I repreſented to them thereupon, "That I never had any ſe-"parate allowance during the reſidence of his excel-"lency the envoy at PEKIN, having had the honour of "eating always at the ſame table with him; that, for "this reaſon, I could now receive nothing, until I ſhould "know preciſely wherein it was to conſiſt; and that, "after I ſhould know what the allowance was to be, I "ſhould deſire them to pay me the amount of the "ſame in money, which they were to pay to the pur-"veyor." Theſe gentlemen were not wanting in letting me know, "That I ought not ſo nicely to examine "what the Bogdoi-Chan, without any obligation, had "ordered to be given me, out of his mere grace. But I aſſured them, in ſtrong terms, in my turn, "That I

"abſo-

" abſolutely would receive nothing on theſe terms; for " I was very doubtful whether the Bogdoi-Chan was " informed, that ſuch a perſon was truſted with the diſ- " poſition of what allowance he was pleaſed to order " for me." This reſolution much diſcompoſed the gentlemen Mandarins, who had reckoned on ſupplying their own tables with my proviſions; but, ſeeing how difficult it was to obtain their ends on this occaſion, they at laſt delivered to me the following ſpecification, and ſaid it was what the Bogdoi-Chan had ordered for my allowance, viz. per day, MARCH. 1721.

1 fiſh.	2 oz. of butter.
1 ſheep.	2 oz. of lamp-oil.
1 pot of taraſſun.	½ gin ſalted cabbage
1 fowl.	2 ſmall meaſures of rice.
1 bowl of milk.	15 gin of wood.
2 oz. of tea.	

To my interpreter per day,

1 oz. of tea.	2 ſmall meaſures of rice.
½ gin of flower.	8 gin of wood. and
2 oz. of butter.	Every 9 days a ſheep.
2 oz. of lamp-oil.	

To every one of my domeſticks per day,

1½ gin of beef.	1 meaſure of rice.
1 oz. of ſalt.	5 gin of wood.

To

MARCH. 1721. To a dragoon who was left behind, by the envoy, at PEKIN, upon account of ſome tapeſtries they were working for his Czariſh Majeſty,

1 meaſure of rice.	2 oz. of lamp-oil.
1 oz. of tea.	5 gin of wood. and
½ gin of flower.	Every 9 days a ſheep.
2 oz. of butter.	

By *laen* you are to underſtand ounces; and by *gin*, pounds.

Upon delivering this ſpecification, the Mandarins acquainted me, "That, as they were obliged to buy "the fiſh, the fowls, the ſheep, and the milk, for my "proviſions, with ready money, I might receive the "value of thoſe things in money; but, in regard to the "other articles, I muſt content myſelf to receive them, "in kind, from the Chan's magazines *.

Upon which I aſſured them, "I ſhould make no "objection, provided they did it in a decent manner, "and not by unknown people that marched off as ſoon

* The Emperor of CHINA receives the greateſt part of the tribute of his ſubjects, in the country, in proviſions and manufactures of the growth of the ſeveral provinces; which are afterwards diſtributed, in kind, to all perſons in the ſervice of this monarchy, and reckoned to them as part of their ſalary; ſo that all the gold and ſilver, that comes into the treaſury of the Chan, ariſes from the tribute of the cities, the duties inwards and outwards, the tolls of paſſengers, the mines of gold and ſilver, and fines or confiſcations; all which together amount, every year, to immenſe ſums.

"as

" as they had thrown it down in my court-yard, as MARCH.
" they had once done." At the ſame time I demanded 1721.
of them, " Whether I could ſtill have the Chan's hor-
" ſes, to make uſe of when I ſhould have occaſion, as I
" had during the reſidence of the envoy extraordinary."
They anſwered me thereupon, " That I might certain-
" ly have the Chan's horſes always; but then, as the
" ſtables of the Chan were at a conſiderable diſtance,
" it was neceſſary for me always to acquaint them of
" my intentions, the day before I intended to ride out;
" upon ſuch notice, they would take care that the hor-
" ſes ſhould always be ready at my quarters, very early
" in the morning*." To avoid this inconvenience, and to avoid the being obliged to let them know every day where I would go, I took the reſolution to buy ſix horſes, and to keep them at my own expence, though forage was very dear at PEKIN. The guard that had been placed upon the envoy's quarters, during the time of his ſtay at PEKIN, under the command of a brigadier, remained ſtill on the ſame footing after his departure, as did the two Mandarins of the 37th order†,

* At PEKIN they always make viſits in town on horſe-back. But the Princes of the blood, and the grand Mandarines, are generally carried in litters on theſe occaſions, attended with a numerous train of domeſticks.

† Every man appointed to any publick charge, or dignity, in CHINA, from the higheſt to the loweſt, is called by the name of Mandarin; whence it comes that there are many orders, which are all diſtinguiſhed,

MARCH. 1721. together with a clerk, to receive from me whatever I ſhould have to propoſe, whether by word of mouth, or by writing; and to make their report to the council of foreign affairs; and this appeared to me a very good omen.

The 9th, the brigadier of the guard of my quarters let me know, that the Bogdoi-Chan would return from hunting the next day; and that if I was deſirous to go to meet him, he would give orders, that the Mandarins ſhould be ready to eſcort me, with a guard of horſe, for the ſecurity of my perſon.

The 10th, I mounted on horſe-back, very early, to go to meet the Chan. When his majeſty ſaw me, he called me to him, and asked me "If I did not repine "to be alone in a foreign empire, ſo far from EUROPE?" he further asked, "If I was well? and if I was content-"ed?" Upon which, having with a profound reverence thanked his majeſty for my gracious reception, I aſſured him, "That I found myſelf perfectly well; and I "could not but be well content with having the ho-"nour of reſiding at the court of ſo grand a monarch."

one from the other, by difference of habits, characters, and figures, which are embroidered or ſewed on their habits; in ſo much, that, upon ſeeing a Mandarin, it may be immediately known of what order he is; becauſe every Mandarin is forbid to appear in publick without the habit of his order, under pain of the moſt rigorous penalties.

After

After which his majeſty, having diſmiſſed me, was carried in his litter to PEKIN, followed by a very numerous court.* MARCH. 1721.

The 11th, 12th, and 13th, I notified to the Mandarins, ſolicitors in my affairs, "That, having ſeveral "things to get made for the Emperor, my maſter, I "ſhould have great occaſion for the money which di-"vers merchants of PEKIN were owing to the commiſ-"ſary GUSAITNIKOFF, who had been lately at PEKIN "with the caravan of SIBERIA†; and I craved their aſ-"ſiſtance to facilitate the recovery of thoſe ſums, ſee-"ing the debtors had engaged themſelves, before the "envoy extraordinary, to pay me the ſame immediate-"ly after his departure." The Mandarins explained themſelves very favourably thereupon; but our debtors, having got notice of it, retired into the country; which

* The Emperor of CHINA might be then in his 69th lunar year; but he was ſtill very well diſpoſed in body and mind, and was looked upon as a monarch of ſuperior penetration and genius. The fathers Jeſuits, miſſionaries in CHINA, had great influence with him; and he uſually conſulted them on all affairs of importance. He mounted the throne anno 1662, aged eight years, and died in September 1722.

The Prince, his 3d ſon, who already commanded the armies of the empire, ſucceeded to the empire; for the deceaſed Emperor had confined his two eldeſt ſons in a cloſe priſon, ſome years before his death, upon ſome alledged attempts to rebel, true or falſe, and declared them excluded from ſucceeding to the empire. Nevertheleſs their brother ſet them at liberty, immediately upon his acceſſion to the empire, and heaped favours on them, to make them forget the loſs of their right, which he poſſeſſed.

† They give the title of Commiſſary to thoſe who have the direction of the caravans, which come from SIBERIA to PEKIN to trade.

MARCH. obliged me to leave this affair to another opportunity.

1721. The 15th, the Bogdoi-Chan went to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, which is a houſe of pleaſure belonging to his majeſty, 12 ly weſtward of PEKIN, where he frequently makes his reſidence. But having obſerved, in his paſſing, that the triumphal arches, and other like ornaments, which are raiſed on his birth-day, on both ſides of the grand road, paved with ſquare flat ſtones, that reaches from PEKIN to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, were not of the uſual magnificence, all the miniſtry were diſgraced for many weeks. Upon which the miniſters, having inſtantly ordered the demolition of all that had been built, cauſed to be built up anew, from the palace of the Emperor at PEKIN quite to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, a great number of triumphal arches, and of moſt magnificent columns, of an exquiſite taſte, all embelliſhed with gildings, and feſtoons of all ſorts of rich ſilks of moſt lively figures and colours. At the ſame time, in ſeveral places, they erected theatres of great beauty; where the moſt able comedians exerted their talents, in repreſenting the moſt difficult and curious parts of their profeſſions; accompanied with the grandeſt concerts of muſick, both vocal and inſtrumental, diverſified with the amuſements of dancing, and feats

of

of uncommon agility. All theſe entertainments being prepared, the miniſters went in a body to the imperial palace, ſupplicated the monarch on their knees, with their faces proſtrate to the ground, that he would be pleaſed to admit them to his good graces; and that he would be pleaſed to ſend ſome, in whom he could confide, to examine their new ſtructures*. But the Bogdoi-Chan ordered them to be told, "That he "would ſee nothing of what they had done, and that "he would never celebrate his birth-day at PEKIN "more; for that he was as much Emperor of CHINA "at CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, as he ſhould be though "ſitting on the imperial throne at PEKIN†." MARCH. 1721.

The 17th, I deſired the Mandarins, ſolicitors for my affairs, to come to me upon buſineſs that regarded the council. Upon which they ſent me word, that one of them being ill, the other dared not to meddle

* The honours which they pay to the Emperors of CHINA approach even to adoration; all thoſe who have audience of him, being obliged to proſtrate themſelves three times before him, from which none are exempted, not even ambaſſadors, or other foreign miniſters; Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, notwithſtanding his quality, being obliged to go through that ceremony, as well as all others.

† The deceaſed Emperor of CHINA held the great lords of CHINA very cheap; for he well knew, that, in their hearts, they bore the TARTAR yoke very impatiently. Nevertheleſs, ſince the ſevere executions he ordered in the beginning of his reign, he ſeldom puniſhed with death the great CHINESE Mandarins, who fell into diſgrace, contenting himſelf with condemning them to pay exorbitant pecuniary fines; which incapacitated them from doing any thing againſt his authority, whatever deſire they might have ſo to do.

in

MARCH. 1721. in matters that regarded the council, without the participation of his comrade. This obliged me to wait the recovery of the ſick Mandarin, and till I could ſee them both together.

The 18th, 19th, and 20th, I was willing to avail myſelf of the opportunity the ſickneſs of one of my Mandarins gave me, to make ſome viſits to merchants of my acquaintance, and to the Fathers Jeſuits, hoping thereby to induce them to return my viſits, and give me opportunity of knowing ſomething of the commerce of this empire. But I found that they all received my viſit with very forced civilities, and great reſerve; particularly the merchants, who endeavoured to appear much occupied about other important affairs; ſo that ſeeing it very difficult to bring them into my views, in the preſent conjuncture, I thought it beſt to poſtpone theſe ſorts of viſits to a more proper time. But they, not doubting that ſuch a reception would occaſion my making many reflections, let me know, by a third hand, "That my viſits ſhould be always "moſt agreeable to them, and that they wiſhed, with "all their hearts, to divert me every day better than "the cuſtom of their country permitted them; and "likewiſe, on occaſion, to come and ſee me, were it

"not

" not for fear of the ſoldiers, who followed me every " where, which prevented them. For in caſe they " ſhould not place the ſoldiers in the ſame chamber " with themſelves and me, and entertain them with " every thing to their liking, they were capable of ac- " cuſing them of having a clandeſtine commerce, of " great importance, with me, or other ſuſpicious ne- " gotiations, which would not fail of coſting them con- " ſiderable ſums of money, and poſſibly might prove " their entire ruin*." It is true, the Fathers Jeſuits, could not alledge ſuch fears of the ſoldiers of my guard as the merchants; their belonging to the court put them on quite another footing than the ordinary rank of people were upon; but they pretended, that, as they were foreigners, they were obliged to act with great caution, in order to prevent ſuſpicion†. This

MARCH. 1721.

* The Princes of the houſe of the TARTARS, who at preſent reign in CHINA, have learned, at the expence of their predeceſſors, that they ought not to depend too much on the fidelity of the CHINESE; for this reaſon, all the military of the empire is, in a manner, compoſed of MONGALL TARTARS; who, on that account, enjoy conſiderable privileges; which makes them very inſolent and almoſt inſupportable to the CHINESE. And as the number of theſe TARTARS were not deemed ſufficient to curb the CHINESE, conſidering the vaſt extent of the empire, the late Bogdoi-Chan found it neceſſary, in order to augment their number, to make a law, whereby all the TARTAR MONGALLS, men, or women, who ſhould marry with CHINESE, were obliged to bring up their children according to the cuſtoms of the MONGALLS, and to teach them the MONGALLS language; and, that by means of this precaution, all thoſe children ſhould be deemed naturalized MONGALLS, and enjoy the privileges of native MONGALLS.

† This was but an excuſe of the Jeſuits, to prevent the viſits of Mr. de LANGE, whoſe

did

MARCH. 1721. did not ſurprize me at all, in regard to a nation, the genius of which I already had a tolerable knowledge of. The affairs I had to manage were of a very difficult nature; and in all countries the entering properly into ſuch ought to be the principal care; but I, nevertheleſs, flattered myſelf that this unpromiſing aſpect, at my entering on my functions, would take a more favourable turn, as ſoon as the Bogdoi-Chan ſhould receive the credentials I had from the Emperor, my maſter.

The 22d, my Mandarins came together to ſee me, and to know what I had to propoſe to the council; upon which I requeſted them

" 1. To put the Allegamba, or preſident of the " council for foreign affairs, in mind, in my name, that " they had let my credentials, from the Emperor my " maſter, remain in my hands beyond the uſual time; " and that I waited, through his hands, the order of " the Bodgoi-Chan, to appoint when he would pleaſe " to receive them.

" 2. To acquaint the preſident, that I had reſolved " to hire a houſe for myſelf, near the quarters of the

reſiding at PEKIN could not be very agreeable to them; as it was to act in the affairs of a monarch who had turned all the Jeſuits out of his empire, and would ſuffer no other ROMAN CATHOLIC miſſionaries, but the CAPUCHINS, to reſide in his dominions.

" RUSSI-

" RUSSIANS, againſt the arrival of the caravan; to the MARCH.
" end that the ſaid quarters might be repaired, which, 1721.
" from age, were gone to ruin, and might be entirely
" beat down by the approaching rainy ſeaſon; that, un-
" leſs this reparation be made, the commiſſary would
" not know where to lodge on his arrival at PEKIN, ex-
" cept he would run risk of having the merchandiſes
" damaged.

" 3. To demand, for me, a paſſport, with the ne-
" ceſſary eſcort, for ſome baggage, left at PEKIN dur-
" ing the time of the ambaſſade, which I wanted to
" ſend, out of hand, to SELINGINSKY *." The ſaid bag-gage was ſome raw ſilk which I had bought on account of Mr. NICOLAI CHRISTIZY, with caſh and effects that he had left in my hands †.

The anſwer, which I received immediately after from thoſe gentlemen, contained in ſubſtance, " That
" the Emperor himſelf having allotted that houſe for

* SELINGINSKY is the laſt fortreſs, belonging to RUSSIA, towards the north-weſt of CHINA. This town is in the country of the MONGALLS, upon the eaſt ſide of the river SELINGA, 30 days journey from PEKIN, in lat. 51. 30. The climate of SELINGINSKY is very mild, and the country about it very pleaſant. The MONGALL TARTARS did not accuſtom themſelves to the cultivation of ground, yet every thing that is ſown or planted there thrives exceedingly.

† Through all RUSSIA they uſe hardly any other ſilk but that of CHINA, which is undoubtedly the beſt in the world; it being certain, that two pounds of CHINESE ſilk will go as far in manufacturing as three pounds of either PERSIAN or ITALIAN ſilk.

MARCH, 1721. "my quarters, no perſon would readily inſinuate to "him that I was not ſatisfied with it; and that, with- "out a ſpecial licence from him, no perſon in all PE- "KIN, were it even the imperial Prince himſelf, would "dare to let me a lodging, ſeeing it would thereby "look as if the Bogdoi-Chan had not an inhabitable "houſe for a foreigner." To which I replied, "That I "made no doubt of ſo great a monarch's having hou- "ſes enough for lodging as many foreigners as he "pleaſed; but, that I was well perſuaded, when the "Bogdoi-Chan ſhould be informed of the condition "that houſe was in, he would not oblige me to inha- "bit it longer. Beſides, that it was acting contrary to "the common right, allowed by all the world, to re- "ſtrain a perſon, in a publick character, from hiring a "lodging, with his own money, which might be com- "modious for him, without a previous application to "the Emperor himſelf." They anſwered me there- upon "That the uſages in EUROPE were not practiſed "by them; and, as all the countries in the world had "their particular cuſtoms, CHINA had her's, which "would not be altered on any conſideration whatever." They alſo told me plainly, "That they could not write "to the council on this ſubject, for that they knew of

"a

"a certainty, that no perſon durſt make the propoſiti- MARCH.
"on to the Emperor." Upon which having told them, 1721.
"That, as the caſe was ſo, I muſt ſubmit to remain
"there, till the impoſſibility of abiding longer may
"force me to have recourſe to other meaſures." They, of themſelves, propoſed to me, "That the Chan
"might be petitioned to allot me other quarters, with-
"out alledging that my preſent quarters were in ſo mi-
"ſerable a condition." But ſeeing I did not pretend to go out, but becauſe it was in ſuch a ruinous ſtate, they perſiſted in ſaying, it was impoſſible for them to make the propoſal to his Majeſty on that footing.

The 23d, the aforeſaid Mandarins came again to me to acquaint me, "That the preſident would conſult
"the other members of the council upon my creden-
"tial letters, and would put the Emperor in remem-
"brance, when occaſion ſhould offer. But, concerning
"the ſending away the baggage, I muſt have patience
"till after the Emperor's birth-day, ſeeing the prepara-
"tions for its celebration ſo fully employed every body,
"that nothing elſe was attended to, though of ever ſo
"great conſequence."

APRIL.

APRIL. 1721.

The 1ſt of this month, the Aloy, or maſter of the ceremonies of the Chan, invited me, by order of the Bogdoi-Chan, to come to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE. Upon which I went there inſtantly. I was no ſooner arrived, but I ſent to notify the ſame to the ſaid Aloy, and forthwith went to his apartment. I underſtood from him, that the Bogdoi-Chan had an intention to have admitted me that day to an audience, but that other affairs had unexpectedly interveened; he had ordered him to deliver to me a piece of the tapeſtry which they were at work upon for the Czar, in order that I might ſend it to RUSSIA by an expreſs, and acquaint the Czar, that what pieces remained to be made ſhould be ready in three months *. I laid hold of this opportunity of the paſſports and convoy neceſſary for the piece of tapeſtry, to requeſt of this gentleman, "That he would "be ſo good as to manage it ſo, as that, when his Ma- "jeſty ſhould give order for the paſſport and convoy "for the piece of tapeſtry, I ſhould, at the ſame time, "be furniſhed with paſſports for the baggage above-

* The tapeſtry of CHINA is generally made of ſatin, embroidered with large figures of gold and ſilk; the colours very bright, but the deſigns not correct; they are not adjuſted to furniſhing of rooms, unleſs beſpoke on purpoſe, or compoſed of many different pieces.

"menti-

" mentioned, which I had to forward; and that he " would pleaſe to be at the trouble of informing him- " ſelf, when his Majeſty would be pleaſed to receive " my letters of credence from the Czar, with which I " was charged." Whereupon the Aloy deſired me to remain at his lodgings, whilſt he went to make the propoſal to the Emperor; and, at his return, he acquainted me, " That his Majeſty would, out of hand, give " orders to the council, that they ſhould furniſh me " with the paſſports and convoy neceſſary, as well for " the tapeſtry as the baggage I wanted to ſend; but that " it could not be till after the birth-day." That as to the letters of credence, he did not find it proper to mention it to the Emperor, it appearing to him that his Majeſty frequently thought of me, and would not forget my letters of credence †; and gave me, in ſome

APRIL. 1721.

† The late Emperor of CHINA, notwithſtanding his great age, had ſo extraordinary a memory, till a little time before his death, that a FLEMISH JESUIT, who is yet at PEKIN, recounted to one in the retinue of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, that, above 20 years ago, this monarch having ſhown him a wood-picker, asked him if there were ſuch birds in their country; and, having anſwered yes, he asked its name in FLEMISH; that, ſome time after the arrival of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, the Emperor, having caſt his eye on ſuch a bird, asked him then, alſo, if ſuch birds were in their country; and now anſwering, No, the Emperor asked him why he did not tell him the truth; and, if he did not remember, that, at ſuch a time, he told him there were ſuch birds in their country; upon which the father JESUIT declared, that he had been ſo long out of his own country, that he really did not know whether there was or not. The Emperor was very merry upon the JESUIT's having forgot his mother-tongue; and told him the bird's name in FLEMISH.

meaſure,

APRIL. 1721. measure, an assurance that the Chan would not long defer the receiving it. And then he made his excuses that he could not longer wait on me, being obliged instantly to return to the court.

The 2d, according to custom, the birth-day of his Majesty should have been celebrated, with the utmost magnificence, at CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE; but, inasmuch as his Majesty was still displeased with his ministers, he only received the ordinary compliments on that occasion, without any other ceremony; after which every body retired to their own houses. I had, among others, the honour of paying my compliments to his Majesty on that occasion. That which appeared, to me, most worthy of observation, at that time, was 3000 old men, the youngest of which was above 60 years old; which, by express order of the Emperor, had been brought, to PEKIN, from all the provinces of the empire. They were all dressed in yellow, which is the colour of the imperial liveries, and marched, in parade, to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, where they ranged themselves in the court of the castle, and had the honour of making their compliments to the Emperor; after which his Majesty distributed to every one, without distinction, 4 laen of silver, and sent them home.

The

The ſame day, the parſon of the church of ST. NICOLAS at PEKIN *, preſented me with a memorial of ſome debts which he had owing him, by diverſe perſons of that city, on account of the deceaſed Archimandrite; praying my aſſiſtance in the affair. APRIL. 1721.

The 3d, having received, from the council, the neceſſary paſſport for the courier I was to diſpatch with the piece of tapeſtry, I diſpatched him, the ſame day, under the eſcort of a CHINESE courier.

The 8th, ſome unknown people, having entered my houſe, told me, by my interpreter, "That they had "bought for me a certain number of ſheep; but, if I "would not receive them in kind, they were ready to "pay me half a laen of ſilver for every ſheep." I returned them in the ſame manner I did the former, letting them know, "That ſome perſon of the college, "which had the direction of the Emperor's magazines "of proviſions, muſt come to me to ſhow me thoſe

* Thoſe of the GREEK religion have but one church at PEKIN; but the ROMAN CATHOLICS have three churches very magnificently built, where there reſort, on Sundays and Holidays, a number of people of all conditions, the ROMAN CATHOLIC religion being tolerated there; but it is remarkable, that the men do not uncover their heads during divine ſervice, becauſe it is a mark of infamy, among them, to have the head uncovered; no women appear there, having a ſeparate apartment in the churches. The late Emperor favoured the worſhip of the ROMISH church to ſuch a degree, that he ordered that all the ſons of Mandarins, who made their ſtudies under the direction of the JESUITS, ſhould be obliged to go, all Sundays and Holidays, to their churches; which gave great uneaſineſs to the CHINESE Bonzes.

"who

APRIL. 1721. "who were to bring me proviſions." They attempted ſtill, on ſeveral occaſions, to bring in wood and other proviſions, in the ſame way, to my houſe, without my being able to know who they were, or who ſent them.

The 11th, I received the paſsport for the baggage of Mr. NICOLAI CHRISTIZY, which I diſpatched two days after from PEKIN, under the eſcort of a CHINESE courier. The preſident of the council letting me know, at the ſame time, "That I ought not to ſend ma-"ny of thoſe expeditions, as long as the new treaty of "commerce, between the two empires, was unratified "in the accuſtomed forms; ſeeing it was not under-"ſtood, that they conſented to a continual paſſage, by "ſmall caravans; which I myſelf ſufficiently knew the "reaſons for, having aſſiſted at all the conferences held "on that ſubject."

The 13th, I learned that the Bogdoi-Chan was about to ſet out inſtantly for IEGCHOL L, which is a town newly built, with a magnificent caſtle, without the great wall 440 ly, or two days by poſt, eaſtward of PEKIN, where he uſually paſſes the fine ſeaſon of the ſummer in hunting, and other country diverſions.

The 14th, I mounted on horſe-back to go to the preſident of the council; being arrived at the gate, the guard

guard made me wait till they had acquainted him of my being there; immediately after which he ſent one of his ſervants to inform himſelf "Whether I came "purely on a viſit, or had occaſion to ſpeak to him "about buſineſs; and, that in caſe I came about buſi- "neſs, that I ſhould communicate the ſame to his ſer- "vant, that he might inform his maſter of the ſub- "ject of it." I made my compliments to the preſident by the meſſenger, and told him, "That I came to pay "a viſit to his maſter; but as to the buſineſs I came "about, that concerned the maſter not the ſervant." After which the ſame ſervant returning, told me, "That I would be welcome to his maſter*." Where- upon, entering into the court-yard, the preſident came out of his apartment to receive me; and having taken me by the hand, after ſome reciprocal compliments, he led me into an open ſaloon, where we ſat down to- gether, and were ſerved with tea and milk, according to the CHINESE manner. After ſome time, I deſir- ed that he would put the Bogdoi-Chan in remem- brance, that I had letters to preſent to him from the Czar, my maſter; and that I ſhould be very glad to

APRIL. 1721.

* In CHINA, when they go to ſee a Man- darin, of what order ſoever, upon buſineſs regarding his office, the Mandarin is obliged to put on the habit peculiar to his order; upon failure whereof, he is amerced in large fines.

APRIL. 1721. know if he would be pleaſed to receive them before his departure. He anſwered me thereupon as the maſter of ceremonies had done before, "That his Ma-"jeſty was well informed of it, and would know him-"ſelf when he would have time to receive them, with-"out being put in mind of it; and that, if we ſhould "put his Majeſty in remembrance of it, that would "look as if he or I wanted to preſcribe the time of do-"ing it to his Majeſty." I ſought, by all ways poſſible, to engage him one way or other in this affair, but all in vain; and I was obliged to hold this for an anſwer; after which he added, "That if his Majeſty had reſolv-"ed not to receive my letter of credence, he would not "have conſented to my reſiding at his court, in quality "of agent; and that Mr. de ISMAYLOFF having ſufficient-"ly explained the reaſons of my ſtay in PEKIN, theſe "letters could contain nothing very preſſing." Upon which I replied to him, "That in EUROPE the monarchs "were not accuſtomed, when the Czar wrote letters to "them, to let ſuch a length of time paſs without re-"ceiving them; nor take it amiſs, from their miniſters, "if they put them in mind of ſuch important affairs; "that I never expected ſuch an anſwer in CHINA; but "yet, as it was what I could not remedy, I muſt bear

"it

"it patiently, till ſuch time as his Majeſty was diſpoſed APRIL.
"to receive them." 1721.

The 16th, I mounted again on horſeback to go to ſee the Alegada, or firſt miniſter, in hopes of getting a reſolution more favourable to my affair, than I got from the preſident of the council. Being arrived at his houſe, I was indeed admitted to come into his court-yard; but, as I had no deſire to go into the rooms of his ſervants, I was obliged to remain in the court till they notified to him my being there. He, like the other, ſent a ſervant to me, to inform himſelf of the reaſon of my coming. To whom I ſignified, that I wanted the honour of ſeeing him, and of acquainting him with an affair which I did not think proper to explain to a ſervant. The ſame ſervant returned very ſoon to me, ſaying, "My maſter thanks you, Sir, for "the trouble you have given yourſelf; he is very well, "but it is not convenient for him to ſee you."

The 17th, I was again in his neighbourhood; and having ſent my interpreter to him to ask permiſſion to ſee him for a moment; he ſent me word, that it was impoſſible, becauſe he was that inſtant going to his Majeſty; and that he did not know when he ſhould have time to ſpeak with me. Whereupon, ſeeing this was

APRIL. 1721. an affair that could not be forced, I reſolved to let it ly dormant for ſome time.

The 19th, I went to ſee a GERMAN Father Jeſuit; who, being an old acquaintance, and a friend of mine from my firſt journey to CHINA, made no ſcruple of telling me, that many of the principal Mandarins of CHINA much diſapproved of the Chan's conſenting to my remaining at PEKIN*. But that as there was no perſon, in all the empire, that was bold enough to dare contradict the will of the Emperor, unleſs they would expoſe themſelves to very great danger, it was very probable they would, by degrees, accuſtom themſelves to my being there†. He ſaid to me, alſo, that he had frequently ſent his ſervant to me with his compliments; but that the guard at my door had as often turned him back, as a perſon who had no buſineſs at my houſe. Nevertheleſs, he did not think they would have been

* The CHINESE regard their ancient laws and cuſtoms as ſacred and inviolable; and it is not to be wondered at, that they, with great reluctance, ſuffer the reſidence of a RUSSIAN agent at PEKIN; as it is directly contrary to the fundamental conſtitutions of the empire; which abſolutely forbid the CHINESE to go out of the empire, and the admiſſion of foreigners to an abode in it.

† The frequent executions which the late Emperor of CHINA was obliged to cauſe to be made, in the early part of his reign, in order to keep the CHINESE quiet, occaſioned ſuch a dread in all the CHINESE, that the greateſt lords of the empire could not approach his perſon without fear and trembling. Nevertheleſs, this monarch was far from being a tyrant, in reality; for he was a true lover of juſtice, and ſpared the blood of his ſubjects as much as poſſible. He had forbid, under the moſt ſevere penalties, the putting a criminal to death, for what crime ſoever, unleſs he ſhould confirm and ſign the ſentence of death with his own hand.

ſo

ſo untractable, if he would have given them a piece of money. He moſt ſtrongly enjoined to take no notice of what he told me; for he would by no means appear in this affair, it was ſufficient that I was informed by him, in order to take my meaſures thereupon when occaſion offered. APRIL. 1721.

There are at PEKIN a great number of ſmall merchants, or rather pedlars, who, as ſoon as they hear of any foreigners being arrived from RUSSIA, or other parts, bring to their quarters all ſorts of merchandiſe, which they get partly from the brokers, and partly from other houſes of different ſorts of people, who may have any goods which they would be willing to diſpoſe of; and it is often better to deal with theſe pedlars, for all ſorts of curioſities, and for made ſilks, than with the ſhop-keepers; for which reaſon I bid ſome of theſe people bring to my houſe, from time to time, what they ſhould light upon moſt curious in its kind, whether in rich ſilks, or jewels, or other goods of value, to the end that I might acquire a competent knowledge of all the ſorts of merchandiſe to be got in this city. Upon which they repreſented to me, that I might well believe that they ſought nothing more than to gain a little money, it being their trade; and of conſequence

APRIL. 1721. quence they would not fail of doing as I desired them, if my house was occupied by different persons; because what goods were not liked by one might find a buyer in another, and so they might probably always sell something; but as I alone occupied the house, and had such a numerous guard at the gate, they did not know how to do it; because, before they were permitted to enter my house, they were obliged to agree with the soldiers of the guard, how much they were to pay them on their going out; and, whether they sold any thing or not, they were equally obliged to pay the money they agreed to for the permission of entry.

The 20th, I send to demand of the Mandarins, who had the care of my affairs, "If it was with their know-"ledge that the soldiers of the guard that were at my "gate, did not permit any person to enter my house "without their giving them money? They, in answer, let me know, "That they knew nothing of the matter; "but they would not fail to make inquiry, and if they "found, that the soldiers, through ignorance, had done "such a thing, they would put things in better order "for the future." And I found that they had spoke to the officers of the guard, who told them, "They had "strict orders to guard this house, and take particular

"care

"care that the common people, who are generally very "inſolent, ſhould not find means of coming into the "court-yard to ſteal any thing; and as they were to be "anſwerable, they were obliged to uſe the precautions "neceſſary, to this effect." They came to report this to me, as an unanſwerable argument. But I aſſured them, that whenever the guard admitted people to enter my houſe, during the day-time, I would not make them anſwerable for any robbery that might happen at my houſe; for that I had a ſufficient number of my own ſervants to drive out of my court-yard any perſons who ſhould dare to come there without having buſineſs. APRIL. 1721.

It muſt be obſerved, on this occaſion, that the CHINESE have the cuſtom of explaining themſelves but once on one propoſal; and, having once given an anſwer upon a matter, whatſoever it be, they always hold themſelves upon this anſwer, as an infallible argument; ſo that if you turn an affair into twenty different lights, to convince them, by one means or other, of their error, or to make them alter their ſentiments, it is all loſt trouble; they firmly holding by their firſt word. And it is a general rule with the CHINESE, high and low, in all they have to do with foreigners; in ſo much that

APRIL. 1721. that every time a propoſal is made to them, which their intereſt or vanity may incline them not to approve, it may be certainly depended upon, that, after infinite diſputes, you will be obliged to receive the firſt words, which they pronounced in the beginning, for an anſwer, be it agreeable or diſagreeable.

The 21ſt, I ſpoke with the brigadier of my guard about this affair, who is a perſon generally eſteemed by all the people of merit in the empire; ſome years paſt, he had filled the greateſt poſts of the ſtate, but was diſgraced, and made brigadier on account of the bad conduct of his brother. I can truly ſay, this is the moſt worthy man I have known in CHINA, full of honour, reaſon, and probity; and the Fathers Jeſuits agreed with me, that there was not his equal in all this great empire. He diſapproved very much the conduct of the officers and ſoldiers of my guard; but he repreſented to me, at the ſame time, " That having preciſe " orders from the Emperor, that all ſorts of the lower " people ſhould be prevented from entering or leaving " my houſe at their pleaſure, to the end that no inſult " might be offered me; he could not avoid giving the " ſame orders to the officers of my guard; but to pre- " vent the abuſe of his orders, for time to come, he " would

" would come regularly twice a-week to my quarters, APRIL.
" to have an eye on their behaviour." Which gave me 1721.
opportunities of making a particular friendſhip with him; but neither mine, nor all the threats which the brigadier gave to the officers and ſoldiers on this head, nor the rigorous treatment he made them feel on ſeveral occaſions, could get the better of the inſatiable avarice of theſe military people, who look upon it as their right to exact contributions of thoſe who trade with foreigners. In ſhort, it would have become inſupportable to me, to be at the mercy of the chicanes that this pretended guard of honour ſtudied to vex me with every day, if I had not had the hope that my credential letters would be very ſoon received; and that I ſhould then be able to do my affairs with more ſatisfaction.

The 23d, my interpreter having met one of our debtors, he put him in mind of the promiſes he had made to Mr. de ISMAYLOFF; and aſſured him, that, if he deferred ſatisfying me, he ſhould be arreſted, ſeeing this affair would not allow of more prolongation. Upon which he promiſed to come to me, in two or three days, with his comrades, and to endeavour, to the utmoſt of his power, not to come empty handed.

APRIL. 1721. The 26th, two of theſe debtors came to my houſe with a CHINESE merchant who was their ſecurity; they told me that one of their partners, named DZCHUN-DZCHAN, who was indebted to us in 1400 laen of fine ſilver, died the year before. But, as I was appriſed that three of them were firmly bound in ſuch caſe, one for the other, which they could not themſelves gainſay, this ſum muſt be brought to the account of the ſurvivors. Of theſe two debtors which came to my houſe, the one, named DZCHIN-BORCHE, was ſtill in arrear 700 laen, according to what my interpreter ſaid, but he acknowledged no more than 650 laen; the other, called DZCHIN-SANGA, was to deliver 340 thun of kitaika * on the arrival of the next caravan at PEKIN, and this by virtue of an obligation which he had given to the commiſſary GUSAITNICOFF, payable to him, or order. I told them, "That though I had not in my hands "the obligation he had given to Mr. GUSAITNI-"COFF, that need not hinder their paying the debt "to me, if not all at once, at leaſt, by little and lit-"tle, according as their abilities would enable them, "ſeeing this money was to come into the treaſury

* A ſort of glazed cotton, calendered and ſmoothed, which they make in CHINA, of all ſorts of colours, whereof they ſell great quantities through all the NORTHERN ASIA.

"of

" of his Czariſh Majeſty, and that, as ſoon as they " paid the whole, I would give them an obligation of " indemnity, which would make their obligations to GUSAITNICOFF of no value †. Upon which they replied, " That they could not object to this expedient, " and that conformable to their promiſes to the envoy " extraordinary, to give me entire ſatisfaction there- " upon, they would not fail to do it, ſo as I ſhould re- " ceive part of their debts before the end of the " month." Theſe promiſes continued, from day to day, without any part of them being fulfilled; and as I knew, by my own experience, that there are no where worſe paymaſters than in CHINA, unleſs they can be compelled by force, I was obliged to fall on other methods. APRIL. 1721.

MAY.

The 1ſt, I delivered to my Mandarins two memorials on the ſubject of thoſe debts, and the debts of the parſon of ST. NICHOLAS, deſiring they would preſent them to the council, and communicate to me the an-

† The commerce between RUSSIA and CHINA is, at preſent, a monopoly belonging to the treaſury of SIBERIA; no other ſubjects of RUSSIA being to concern themſelves in it, on pain of death, unleſs employed by the crown, and for account of the crown; though it is often evaded by connivance of the Weywodes on the frontier places. By virtue of the laſt treaty, they can ſend no more than one caravan a-year, from SIBERIA to PEKIN, which doth not conſiſt of more than 200 perſons; inſtead of 1000 and more, which they amounted to heretofore, and which were ſubſiſted at the charge of the Chan of CHINA, whilſt they were on the territories of CHINA; but now they are to ſubſiſt upon their own charges.

MAY. 1721. ſwer which they ſhould receive on them. The ſame day my Mandarins put into my hands 82 laen and 26 fun of fine ſilver; ſaying, "That his Majeſty had ordered this ſum to be paid me for the value of the "ſheep, fiſh, fowls, and milk, for two months paſt; and "for the time to come, every 9 days, a clerk from the "imperial treaſury would bring me 12 laen and 37 "fun, in payment for the ſaid proviſions; and that the "other allowances, which I was to receive in kind, "ſhould be likewiſe ſent me by a clerk of the magazines from whence they were taken." So that all I ſhould receive for my monthly allowance, in money and proviſions, would amount, according to the current prices, to 48 laen; but they allowed me no forage for my horſes, which is a conſiderable article at PEKIN, where forage is extremely dear. After which, during the reſt of this day, the weather was very bad, a great deal of rain, with mighty guſts of wind; the old houſe, where I was lodged, could no longer ſtand the bad weather; all the wall of one ſide of my chamber fell, about midnight, into the court-yard; which made me very apprehenſive for what remained. I was obliged to retire into an adjoining chamber, to avoid, in ſome meaſure, the danger to which I found myſelf expoſed;

as

as this chamber, though a ſorry place, was very low, I found myſelf in leſs danger; beſides, it was not quite ſo old and infirm as the other. MAY. 1721.

The next day, the 2d of this month, I advertiſed my Mandarins of what had happened; praying them to cauſe immediate reparation to be made, if not of the whole houſe, of that apartment where I lodged at leaſt. Whereupon they ſent to aſſure me it ſhould be done without loſs of time.

But, on the 4th, they changed their note; and let me know that they could do nothing in it before the departure of the Emperor, ſeeing the college, which had the care of the buildings, were ſo much employed about the court, that they could give no attention to other affairs for the preſent. Whereupon I offered to repair it by people I would hire on my own expences. But they wanted to impoſe upon me in the price. And the Mandarins proteſted to me, that it was an affair that might be their utter ruin, if the Emperor ſhould come to know that they had conſented to my repairing, with my money, a houſe that belonged to him; but they aſſured me, they ſhould ſet to work upon it very ſoon.

The 8th, the Bogdoi-Chan departed for JEGCHOLL; and,

MAY. 1721. and, having the honour to attend him, on this occaſion, to 15 ly from PEKIN, his Majeſty asked me, "If I "expected the caravan ſoon." I anſwered thereupon, "That I had not received any advices from the com- "miſſary; but, nevertheleſs, I computed that the cara- "van might be at PEKIN in two months from that "time." Whereupon he asked me, "If I would not "come and paſs the time, with the court, at JEG- "CHOLL." I received ſuch a gracious invitation with all due ſubmiſſion; promiſing to come to pay my devoirs to his Majeſty at JEGCHOLL as ſoon as poſſible *. But, on my returning to PEKIN, the governor of the city let me know, "That I could not follow the Emperor, be- "fore his Majeſty had ſent the neceſſary orders to him "and the council to give me poſt-horſes, and the eſ- "cort of Mandarins, which I ſhould have occaſion for "in this journey." In the mean time, I made ſeveral agreements, with diverſe perſons, for different ſorts of japanned ware, which his Czariſh Majeſty wanted to have, which I could not get at the uſual price, becauſe

* The late Emperor of CHINA was extremely affable and gracious towards EUROPEANS, more eſpecially to thoſe who excelled in any ſcience. He was taller than uſual for people of his country; and not to be known, either by his complexion, or features, to be of TARTAR extraction; it was only to be obſerved, that his cheek-bones, under his eyes, were a little riſing and prominent, like the MONGALLS.

thoſe

thoſe who ſupplied me with them, were obliged to give a great part of what they gained on them every day to the ſoldiers of my guard, for the liberty of entering my houſe. MAY. 1721.

The 10th, my Mandarins being come to ſee me, one of them took leave of me; being, as he told me, named by the court to go, in quality of envoy, to the Delay-Lama †; and the other gave me poſitive aſſurances, that, early the next morning, the workmen ſhould begin to repair my quarters; and that they had already provided the materials neceſſary for that purpoſe. In regard to my two memorials, concerning the debts above mentioned, he gave me for anſwer, "That "the preſident would not receive them; not finding it "proper to meddle with ſuch trifling things; as he "had before hand told Mr. de ISMAYLOFF himſelf, "that the council would abſolutely not embarraſs themſelves with any affair of debts; that, nevertheleſs, he "had ordered his Mandarin to preſs the debtors to "diſcharge their debts, in caſe they were in a condi-"tion of paying ſuch ſums."

† The Delay-Lama is the ſovereign pontif of the KALMUCKS, MONGALS, and many other idolatrous nations north of the INDIES. He is adored as a god by all theſe people; and, by them, believed to be immortal. He lives in a convent near the city of POTALA, in the kingdom of TANGUTE, upon an high mountain, ſouth of the deſerts of XAME, toward the frontiers of CHINA. *Vide Hiſt. Genealog. des* TARTARES.

The

MAY. 1721. The 20th, my Mandarin coming, ſtopped at my gate, and having learned that my apartment remained ſtill in the ſame condition, he ſent one of his ſervants to make his excuſes to me, for not coming to ſee me; alledging, that the great heat approaching at noon would, he feared, incommode him. But I cauſed him to betold, for my whole anſwer, "That I did not under-"ſtand ſuch a compliment; and that I wiſhed, with all "my heart, that, in time to come, he would diſpenſe "with coming to my houſe at all." Upon this anſwer he thought fit to come himſelf to me, and to complain much of the negligence of the college, which had the care of the buildings, in not adverting to the repair of my houſe, notwithſtanding he had wrote to them, ſeveral times, on the ſubject, in the moſt preſſing terms. I demanded of him, "What he believed the Czar, my "maſter, would think of ſuch uſage as he ſhowed me; "and, if he was not afraid, that, in time, he might be "made reſponſible for ſuch treatment." But he, laughing, told me, "That there paſſed many other "things with them, and of more importance than this "was, without daring to carry complaints to the Chan, "and he did not doubt but that it was the ſame at "our court." Nevertheleſs the brigadier of my guard,

on

on being informed of the affair, went to the Mandarins of that college, and threatened them with his going himſelf to acquaint the Emperor, that, by their negligence, they contributed to the diminution of his glory in foreign countries, if they did not, without further delay, cauſe my houſe to be repaired the very next day. MAY. 1721.

The 25th, At length there came workmen to put my apartment into an habitable ſtate. The ſame day one of our debtors, named DZCHIN-SANGA, brought me 50 thun of kitaika; but I ſaw no appearance of getting any thing from the others, they being very poor and indigent; and I perceived that the proceedings of our Mandarin, with them, tended more to get ſome little preſents from them to himſelf, from time to time, than ſeriouſly to preſs them to the diſcharge of our debt.

In the months of June, July, and a part of Auguſt, there paſſed nothing material regarding me, either at the court, or with the miniſtry; all thoſe of any diſtinction being gone to partake of country diverſions. Wherefore, I ſhall fill this vacation by a faithful report of the obſervations which I could make, during my ſtay at this court, as well myſelf, as by ſome of my

1721. friends, of the preſent ſtate of trade in the city of PEKIN; but I muſt, at the ſame time, acknowledge to the reader, that there is much wanting to make the obſervations ſuch as they ought to be, and might have been if I had not been ſo ſtreightened, and if they had let me enjoy the means of informing myſelf thoroughly of things.

The people of KOREA, who are tributary to CHINA, come twice a year to PEKIN, * viz. in the months of March and Auguſt, to the number of 40 or 50 perſons, as well to pay their tribute to the Emperor as to carry on their trade; which conſiſts principally in the following merchandiſes.

A ſort of large paper made of raw-ſilk, ſomething like the large paper for wrapping up things in EUROPE. They make uſe of this paper in CHINA, for windows, in place of glaſs.

Paper, with gold or ſilver figures, for hanging their chambers.

* KOREA is a peninſula, eaſtward of the grand wall of CHINA; it is contiguous, on the weſt, to the province of LEOTANG of CHINA, and on the north to the EASTERN MONGALLS. The KOREANS are, from time immemorial, tributaries of CHINA, who treat them very hardly, not permitting them any commerce with ſtrangers. Nevertheleſs, they do not fail to come clandeſtinely with their goods, by the ſea of JAPAN, to the river AMOOR, and thence by the NAUNDA to the city NAUN, to traffick with the MONGALLS, and indirectly with the RUSSIANS.

All

All ſorts of large fans, of different faſhions. 1721.

Mats, very neat and fine, which they uſe in ſummer in place of matraſſes.

Cut tobacco, very ſmall, for ſmoking, much eſteemed in CHINA, and preferred to that of their own growth.

Stripped cotton-ſtuffs.

A ſort of furs which the RUSSES call chorky, and which they call colouk in SIBERIA; it is in great abundance in KOREA; they ſell a great deal of it in PEKIN.

A ſort of dry-fiſh, which they get from a certain large ſhell-fiſh in the ſea of JAPAN.

It is with theſe commodities that they trade; and although they may, in a manner, be conſidered as the ſame nation with the CHINESE, and in ſome degree their ſubjects, yet they do not enjoy the leaſt liberty during their abode at PEKIN; all communication and converſation with foreigners being abſolutely forbidden them, and much reſtricted with the CHINESE themſelves; inſomuch, that the CHINESE are not leſs ſuſpicious of them, than of any other nation whatſoever. As they cannot make by their trade any thing to a conſiderable amount, they generally bring with them to PEKIN large ſums in ſilver, in SPANISH pieces of eight,

1721. and in DUTCH dollars, which are looked upon, in CHINA, as inferior to the fine ſilver of CHINA, which they call the Chan's ſilver, by 5, 6, or 7 *p. cent.* which ſhows, that the inhabitants of KOREA have ſome trade with the iſlands of JAPAN, or, at leaſt, with the iſlands lying between JAPAN and KOREA; although it is abſolutely forbid the inhabitants of that country to have the leaſt communication, or commerce, with other nations, or to admit foreign ſhips into their ports; having, for that end, a Mandarin always reſiding in KOREA, to have an eye on the proceedings of that nation. With this money they buy, at PEKIN,

The fineſt raw-ſilk.

A ſort of damask, called by the RUSSES goly, and by the CHINESE couty-toanza, that is damask of KOREA; becauſe, at firſt, the KOREANS alone bought that ſort of damask.

A ſort of ſtuff mixed with ſilk, fit for linings, called by the CHINESE fanſa.

Tea and china-ware.

All ſorts of diſhes of white copper, for houſhold uſe.

Cotton.

They likewiſe buy the tails of ſables, to border their caps and the collars of their robes.

It

It is likely that they trade into other parts with the silk and damask, which they carry from PEKIN, seeing they take away much greater quantities than the consumption of their own country can require. 1721.

When there is no RUSSIAN caravan, nor any of that nation at PEKIN, they quarter those of KOREA in the habitation appointed for the RUSSES; but when there are RUSSES in this city they give the KOREANS other quarters: for this reason the CHINESE call this house COUTY COANNE, or magazine of the KOREANS, when it is occupied by the KOREANS; and URUSSA COANNE, or magazine of the RUSSES, when occupied by people of that nation.

When the KOREANS, whether deputies from that country or merchants, arrive at PEKIN, there are two Mandarins forthwith named to go to their lodgings to observe who goes in to them, or comes out from them; and to examine the cause of their coming, and how they became acquainted with the KOREANS: they likewise place guards all around their quarters, to prevent any person from having private access to them. When any of this nation go abroad, upon any affair, the guard follows them every where, with large whips, to prevent any person from joining them in the street;

and

1721. and they dare not go to ſee any perſon without permiſſion of the guard. As the inhabitants of KOREA are not uſed to ride on horſeback, and are afraid to mount a horſe, for fear of accidents, they give them a guard of infantry, who have no other arms, when they are in garriſon, than their whips. Beſides all theſe ſteps, full of ſuſpicion, they fix, at their quarters, an edict of the court, ſignifying, that all perſons whatſoever are forbid to enter their houſe without the knowledge of the Mandarin, deputed for that purpoſe, who, after examining them as to what they have to do there, takes notice of their names, and ſends a ſoldier into the houſe with them to obſerve what paſſes. It is a very profitable commiſſion for thoſe Mandarins who are deputed to guard the KOREANS; for they always farm the priviledge of trading with them to that company of CHINESE merchants who offer the moſt money for it, which ſometimes amounts to a conſiderable ſum; and it is by no means permitted to any other merchants, beſides the members of this company, to trade, for that time, with the KOREANS.

The CHINESE have not, in a manner, any trade with the INDIES, * excepting ſome ſmall dealings they may

* CHINA is ſeparated from the country of the Great Mogul by ſandy deſerts, impaſ-

have

have on the frontiers of the neighbouring ſtates; but it was impoſſible for me to get to the knowledge of what thoſe trades conſiſted in; for, among a thouſand people of the inhabitants of PEKIN, it is rare to find one perſon who hath the leaſt knowledge of any thing that paſſes without its gates. It is true that the CHINESE do carry on trade, ſometimes at BENGAL, to the PHILIPPINE iſlands, to BATAVIA, and even to GOA; but that is not brought about but by ſtealth, by the connivance of the Mandarin governors of the ſea ports, obtained by means of a round ſum of money, without the knowledge of the court; beſides, it is abſolutely forbid, to every ſubject of the empire, to go into foreign parts, upon what occaſion ſoever, without a permiſſion, or an order, from the Emperor or the government*. 1721.

The BUCHARIANS come alſo to PEKIN, but without obſerving any ſtated times†. They bring large round

ſable for merchants; and the other provinces of INDIA by mountains, are very difficult to paſs; which in a manner hinders all commerce between thoſe two empires.

* The greateſt part of the CHINESE, who are diſperſed in ſeveral places of the EAST INDIES, for the ſake of commerce, are the poſterity of thoſe who left CHINA when the MONGALS TARTARS made themſelves maſters of that empire; and they have no other than clandeſtine communication with their CHINESE countrymen. They are eaſily known by their long hair, which is natural to them; inſtead of which the CHINESE, ſubjects to the TARTARS, are obliged, under pain of death, to cut their hair ſhort, like the KALMUCKS and MONGALLS, who have all their heads ſhaven, except a tuft of hair on the top of their head, which they preſerve of the natural length of their hair.

† There are two BUCHARIAS; the Great and the Little. The GREAT BUCHARIA is

cornelians

1721. cornelians, of a very good colour, which they barter, with the CHINESE, againſt damasks, kitaika, tea, tobacco, CHINA-ware, and ſilver. They ſtring theſe on ſmall ſilken lines, in the manner of beads; and they are worn by Mandarins of the firſt orders, when they appear at court, or in the colleges, in their habits of ceremony; wearing one row of them about their necks, which hangs down on their bellies. They bring alſo musk, rough diamonds, and many other ſorts of precious ſtones; but, as I was informed, of no great value; becauſe it is rare to find, among the CHINESE, any who will riſque the laying out a conſiderable ſum for a fine ſtone. The CHINESE poliſh theſe ſtones, after their

ſituated between PERSIA and the country of the Grand Mogul, about the 40th degree of latitude; this is the country of the USBECK TARTARS, who are Mahometans. The LITTLE BUCHARIA is ſituated to the eaſt of the Great, and extends to the frontiers of CHINA, on the ſide of the deſert KAMA, and kingdom of TIBET, which is their confine to the ſouth; this laſt is ſubject to the Kontayſha, grand Chan of the KALMUCKS. The BUCHARIANS are a particular nation, which have no connection neither with the Mahometan nor Pagan TARTARS, nor with any other people of thoſe parts. They do not know themſelves whence they draw their origin. Nevertheleſs, they make profeſſion of the Mahometan religion. They occupy the towns of the TWO BUCHARIAS, and only employ themſelves about their commerce. Thoſe of the GREAT BUCHARIA carry on their trade in the dominions of the Great Mogul, in PERSIA, and in SIBERIA, and are tributary to the Chan of the USBECKS. Thoſe of the LITTLE BUCHARIA trade into CHINA, into the kingdoms of TIBET and TANGUT, and with the KALMUCKS and MONGALLS their neighbours; theſe laſt pay tribute to the Kontayſha. The BUCHARIANS have many cuſtoms and ceremonies, much like thoſe of the JEWS, nor is their dialect, phyſiognomy, and ſize much unlike them; which may give occaſion to many reflections.

own

own faſhion, in order to make them proper for orna- 1721.
menting the heads of the fair ſex.

I had no opportunity of being acquainted with any of this nation, not being allowed liberty ſufficient for that end; and on their part, they dared not run the risk of coming to my houſe, for fear of the guard at my gate; ſo that I cannot give an exact account concerning them.

They alſo bring to PEKIN gold-duſt *, which the CHINESE buy commonly at the price of 5, 6, to 7 laen of ſilver per laen of gold-duſt, becauſe it is unrefined; they aſſure me that it is very fine when purified, and is then equal to the gold of the Chan.

Theſe TARTARS dwell in the provinces of CHAMILL and TURFAN †, under the protection of the Emperor of

* The gold which the BUCHARIANS bring to CHINA comes from the high mountains which ſeparate the dominions of the Great Mogul from the GRAND TARTARY. All theſe mountains abound in rich mines, of all ſorts, but none of them are wrought; nevertheleſs they make very conſiderable gains annually, by the great quantities of gold-duſt which the mighty torrents, formed by the rains in the ſpring, along with the ſnows melting, bring down with them into the neighbouring valleys. For the inhabitants of theſe mountains, together with the KALMUCKS, who encamp with their cattle in the adjacent plains, come afterwards to gather theſe grains of gold, in the pits which the torrents have made in their paſſage, and barter them, with the BUCHARIANS, againſt all ſorts of ſmall things for which they may have occaſion in their way of life.

† The provinces of CHAMILL and TURFAN are ſituated to the weſt of the deſert of XAME, towards the 40th degree of latitude. They make a part of the LITTLE BUCHARIA, and have been ſubject hitherto to the Kontayſha Grand Chan of the KALMUCKS; but a few years ſince the CHINESE, joined by the MONGALLS, have poſſeſſed themſelves of it, after having driven out the KALMUCKS.

1721. CHINA, in conſideration of a moderate tribute, which they pay him annually. In return they buy at PEKIN,

Hides of RUSSIA to make boots.

Fox-skins, red and brown.

Squirrel-skins, white and grey.

Beaver-skins.

Sables, and other furs.

Kitaika.

Cotton, like the woolens of EUROPE, of which they uſe part themſelves, and ſell part to the KALMUCKS *, their neighbours; they alſo take

Tea.

Tobacco. and of

The ſmalleſt CHINA-ware; of all which in pretty large quantities.

Beſides the goods I have above ſpecified, I know of no others which they bring to PEKIN.

The moſt valuable furniture of lackered ware, viz. cabinets, chairs, tables, baskets, and other things of

* The KALMUCKS occupy a great part of the NORTHERN ASIA; they are divided into three principal branches, under one ſovereign Chan, whom they call the Kontayſha; they have no fixed habitation, but always live in tents. Though the KALMUCKS are indiſputably the braveſt of the TARTARS, they are, nevertheleſs, deſirous of living peaceably; contenting themſelves with the ſubſiſtence which their cattle can afford them, and do no harm to any, unleſs they are hurt by them; but, when once irritated, they become irreconcilable enemies. Their religion is that of the Delay-Lama.

that

that ſort, as alſo the richeſt porcelain-ware, come from JAPAN *. For, when the Emperor ſends any perſon to JAPAN, in a public character, moſt of the princes and great men of the court ſeldom fail to engage him to bring them ſome of thoſe things at his return. Some times they find means to bring theſe things into CHINA clandeſtinely; but that is very ſeldom. This is the reaſon that the commodities of JAPAN are not always to be had at PEKIN, unleſs a man would pay an exorbitant price; nevertheleſs they are found there ſome times reaſonably enough; becauſe ſeldom a year paſſes that the Emperor doth not amerce ſome or other of the great lords in very conſiderable fines, which obliges them to raiſe all the money they can on their moveables and immoveables; and whoever hath money lying by him doth, on theſe occaſions, lay it out to great advantage, and buy the moſt curious and valuable things for little money †. 1721.

* All merchandiſe of JAPAN is contraband in CHINA; which is the reaſon they cannot be brought into RUSSIA, with the caravans from CHINA, at leaſt without very great riſk. The ſmall quantity of JAPAN goods, which are clandeſtinely brought into CHINA, being kept very private, and paid for at very dear rates by the CHINESE themſelves.

† It ſeems to be a favourite maxim, adopted in all the eaſtern courts, to wink at all the vile practices, and rapacious impoſitions, of the miniſters; and, when they have well plucked and drained the ſubſtance of the people, the prince then ſqueezes them dry for his own uſe.

1721. After the lackered ware of JAPAN, that of the province of FOKIEN is looked upon as the beſt; but none of it comes to PEKIN, becauſe the great lords of CHINA oppreſs the merchants to a great degree, and take their goods from them, upon many frivolous pretences, without leaving them the leaſt hopes of ever obtaining any payment. For this reaſon, all merchants, and others of any lucrative trade, at PEKIN, have fallen into the cuſtom of putting themſelves under the protection of ſome one or other of the Princes of the blood, or other great lords, or miniſters of the court; and, by this means, with the aſſiſtance of a round ſum of money, paid annually to their protectors, they are able to get clear of the extortions of the Mandarins, and ſome times of thoſe of the common ſoldiers. For, without ſuch a powerful protection, a merchant muſt be an undone man at PEKIN, where every one thinks they have an undoubted right to form pretenſions upon a man that lives by trade. And, if any of them are ſo imprudent as to attempt obtaining ſatisfaction, by the way of juſtice, they fall from bad to worſe; for the Mandarins of juſtice, after having drained from them all they can, ſeldom fail of ordering the goods, taken from them unjuſtly, to be brought to the college;

college; but he muſt be a cunning fellow indeed, who ſhall be able ever to get them from thence. 1721.

They have, at PEKIN, a people dexterous enough at lackering, but their works fall far ſhort of thoſe of JAPAN and FOKIEN; which may be attributed to the difference of climate; and it is for this reaſon that the lackered work made at PEKIN is always much cheaper than the other. Nevertheleſs, the lackered work made at PEKIN infinitely exceeds any work of that kind made in EUROPE.

The ſhips which arrive every year at CANTON, from ENGLAND, FRANCE, HOLLAND, DENMARK, and other parts, generally bring the following ſorts of merchandiſe.

Silver of different coins.
All ſorts of fine cloth.
Camblets.
Woolen ſtuffs.
Fine HOLLAND-linen.
Standing clocks and watches.
Looking-glaſſes of all ſizes.
Mathematical inſtruments.
Etwys from ENGLAND.
Pencils.
EUROPEAN paper of all ſorts.

diffe-

1721. Different ſorts of milliner-wares

Some ſorts of EUROPEAN liquors, eſpecially wine.

A good part of thoſe merchandiſes are diſtributed, in preſents, among the Mandarins of the government of that city; of the reſt, the EUROPEAN merchants generally make a very conſiderable profit. They employ the ſilver theſe bring in purchaſing diverſe ſorts of goods, by virtue of an agreement made before hand; they carry away with them from thence,

Raw ſilk.

Damasks wrought according to draughts furniſhed to them.

Wrought ſilks.

Lackered ware.

Tea, green and bohea.

Badians, a ſeed having a taſte much like aniſeed.

Canes. and

CHINA-ware made according to models given them.

They alſo ſome times bring away gold, but very ſeldom, becauſe they generally get it cheaper in the INDIES. They alſo find at CANTON pretty valuable ſtones, except diamonds, but not in any great quantities.

They make the beſt ſilk-brocades of CHINA, that are brought

brought to EUROPE, in the provinces of QUOANTUNG and FOKIEN. 1721.

The ſilver which they bring from EUROPE to CANTON is received at the ſame rate as that brought from KOREA to PEKIN; and they have the advantage of buying their goods, at CANTON, from 30 to 40 per cent. cheaper than they could do at PEKIN.

The laſt year there arrived at CANTON a FRENCH commiſſary, belonging to the new INDIA company eſtabliſhed in PARIS *, who obtained leave of the court to reſide there for time to come; but, when he wanted to diſpatch the ſhip loaden with merchandiſe, he met with ſo many obſtacles at the cuſtom-houſe, and from the government, doubtleſs, to draw more money from him, notwithſtanding he had already made ſufficient preſents, that at length, deſpairing to ſee an end of theſe impoſitions, he gave orders to the captain of the ſhip to weigh anchor, and depart, in ſpite of thoſe people; which was done as he deſired. But he was obliged, to avoid being very ill treated on this occaſion, to take the CHINESE habit, and to retire to a convent of DOMINICANS, at the diſtance of 2 ly from CANTON †; where

* The MISSISSIPI company.

† There are many ROMAN CATHOLIC convents in CHINA, which, in the time of the late Emperor of CHINA, had much the ſame immunities as the convents in EUROPE en-

he

1721. he kept himſelf incognito, till ſuch time as the FRENCH JESUITS, at PEKIN, had found means, by the force of preſents, to obtain liberty for him to appear openly, with two or three domeſticks, and remain there till the court ſhould otherwiſe direct; on the condition that he and his ſervants ſhould wear the CHINESE habit. Nevertheleſs I was afterwards informed, that the Mandarins of the government of CANTON let no opportunity eſcape them of chagreening him; inſomuch, that he found himſelf obliged to re-imbark, the firſt opportunity that offered itſelf. They alſo had the laſt year at CANTON, a frigate from OSTEND, bearing the Emperor of GERMANY's colours.

For the reſt, they carry to CHINA from EUROPE, and bring back from CHINA, a very great variety of toys, and different ſorts of curioſities, upon which they make a very conſiderable profit; but theſe are ſo numerous that it is not poſſible to furniſh a complete ſpecification of them.

In regard to our commerce with CHINA, it is, at preſent, in a very languiſhing condition; and nothing in the world would bring more prejudice to our caravans,

joyed; no perſon durſt enter but with the conſent of the religious of the convent, unleſs by expreſs order of the Emperor of CHINA.

than

than the commerce which is carried on at URGA*; 1721.
for from this place there is brought, monthly, and even weekly, to PEKIN, not only the ſame ſorts of goods which our caravans bring, but of a better quality than thoſe brought by our caravans; and in ſo great quantities, that the merchandiſes which the merchants of PEKIN, who go continually between PEKIN and URGA, to trade with our people, and the goods which the lamas of the MONGALLS † bring from their parts, amount every year to four or five times as much value as the caravans that come to PEKIN in the name of his Czariſh Majeſty. And I have been informed, by thoſe who have been employed by the great men of PEKIN to buy their proviſion of furs at URGA, that there they can buy finer, and more valuable black fox-skins, than they have ever ſeen in our caravan. I muſt add beſides, that theſe great quantities of our mer-

* The camp of the Chan of the weſtern MONGALLS, who are tributaries of CHINA, is called URGA. This Prince encamps on the right of the river SELINGA, about 500 verſts ſouth of SELINGINSKY, towards the frontiers of CHINA; and though he doth not always encamp in the ſame place, yet he ſeldom quits this country without indiſpenſable neceſſity. By virtue of the laſt convention of the frontiers, the RUSSIANS of SELINGINSKY might freely come to URGA to barter RUSSIA-hides, and the coarſe woolen cloth of SIBERIA, againſt cattle; but, as under this pretext, they brought great quantities of valuable furs, which they ſold againſt the merchandiſes of CHINA; this clandeſtine commerce much injured the trade of the caravans of SIBERIA.

† The prieſts of the weſtern MONGALLS, and the KALMUCKS, are called lamas; there are different orders.

1721. chandiſes, brought from URGA to PEKIN, do conſiderably lower the prices; the merchants of PEKIN, and the lamas of the MONGALLS, who bring them to PEKIN, are always capable of affording them 4 or 5 per cent lower than the commiſſary of the caravan can, of which the reader will be eaſily convinced if he gives attention to what I am about to lay before him.

The RUSS merchants, and all other people, that come and go continually, between SELINGINSKY and URGA, buy their goods where they find it moſt convenient; inſtead of which the commiſſary is obliged to receive thoſe he brings with the caravan, out of his Majeſty's treaſury, from ſworn appriſers of the treaſury, who often ſet ſo high a price on them that they find it difficult to ſell them for half the price valued at to them. Another advantage which thoſe who go to trade to URGA enjoy, is, that they make the journey thither in 10 or 12 days; and, beginning their traffick immediately on their arrival, they are ready to return in 2 or 3 days after; in place of which, the commiſſary, after having been at conſiderable expence, can, with difficulty enough, get to PEKIN in three months; and when he gets there, they keep him ſhut up 6 or 7 weeks, according to the maxims practiſed by the CHI-

NESE

NESE hitherto: in conſequence whereof the abundance of merchandiſe of RUSSIA arrived at PEKIN obliges them ſtill to ſpend ſeveral months in getting quit of theirs. 1721.

And as by the laſt treaty they are obliged to maintain themſelves, and all thoſe belonging to the caravan, at their own proper expence, all theſe circumſtances cannot fail of occaſioning a very material difference in the balance of their trade. For, before they began to trade at URGA, a caravan, how large ſoever, was all ſold off in three months, at the prices ſet by the commiſſary himſelf. Moreover all the CHINESE, who traded at that time with us, became rich; inſtead of which, all thoſe who have traded with us ſince that time, have traded to their own loſs, and may be deemed at preſent quite ruined. The expences of a journey to URGA are very trifling; for they can buy at SELINGINSKY as much proviſion for 10 roubles as will ſerve ten perſons for a month; in place of which, 10 roubles will hardly ſerve them a week at PEKIN. Beſides, thoſe who go into CHINA to trade are obliged to buy forage for their horſes, &c. in place of which, thoſe who go to URGA to trade put their horſes to graſs, without coſting them a farthing. The CHINESE merchants, on their ſide, who come to URGA to trade, are likewiſe at much leſs

1721. expence than the commiſſary; becauſe they buy at PEKIN, and the towns through which they paſs, tea, tobacco, rice, and other grains, ordinary damasks, kitaika, and other like merchandiſe, at a very low price; which they barter, on the road with the MONGALLS, againſt horſes, ſheep, and in a word, all ſorts of cattle; inſomuch, that as the private merchants make both their journey, out and home alſo, with infinite leſs expence than the commiſſary of a caravan, it cannot be otherwiſe, than that they can buy and ſell their merchandiſe on much better terms than a commiſſary can, who is obliged to remain, with a number of attendants, in a city where living is ſo dear, as at PEKIN, a longer time than would ſerve a merchant at SELINGINSKY for making 4 or 5 journies to URGA. In fine, when the caravan returns to RUSSIA, they find, after ſuch great expences, that the quantity of CHINESE goods, brought to RUSSIA by private traders, is ſo very large that they muſt ſell theirs at a very moderate price. All theſe circumſtances well conſidered, it is eaſy to comprehend that, upon cloſing the accounts of the caravan, the profits cannot, at this time, be much more than the diſburſements. But to return to our journal.

AUGUST.

AUGUST.

The 14th, I received a letter from commiſſary ISTOPNIKOFF, dated from the river TOLA*, 29th of July; by which he deſired me to prevail on the council for the affairs of the MONGALLS†, to ſend him an aſſignment for 2000 laen of ſilver upon the cuſtom-houſe of KALCHANNA‡; offering to return the ſame (for which he had preſſing occaſion, for the neceſſities of the caravan,) as ſoon as he ſhould commence his trade at PEKIN; and he added, that the ſame favour had been formerly granted to commiſſary OSKOLKOFF.

The 15th, I went to the council, and having ſpoken of this affair with the Askinnamma, or vice-preſident, he promiſed to conſult the regiſters of the council upon it, and to write directly about it to the preſident

* TOLA is a river in the country of the MONGALLS, which comes from the eaſt, and enters the river ORCHON, about 250 verſts ſouth-eaſt of SELINGINSKY. By virtue of the new regulation, the caravans of SIBERIA, who go to PEKIN, ought to enter on the territories belonging to CHINA upon their paſſing this river.

† The council for the affairs of the MONGALLS at PEKIN, is a college who have the care of every thing regarding the nation of the MONGALLS, as well thoſe who are the hereditary ſubjects of the Emperor of CHINA, as, alſo, thoſe who are only under the protection of this empire. This college, at the ſame time, enters indirectly into the cognizance of all the affairs which regard the powers who border on CHINA, from the north-eaſt to the weſt; whence it comes, that they are the court who have moſt to do of any in CHINA.

‡ KALCHANNA is the firſt CHINESE city, within the great wall, that you come to, in the road from SELINGINSKY to PEKIN. It is here that the duties, inwards and outwards, are paid by the RUSSIANS; and alſo for great part of the country of the MONGALLS.

at

AUGUST. 1721. at JEGCHOLL, and that he would communicate his anſwer to me.

The 17th, having ſent my interpreter to the council to know if they had come to any reſolution on this affair, he brought back the following anſwer, "That "they had indeed found, in the regiſters, that the "council had formerly advanced money to the com- "miſſary; but that the trade was an object of ſo little "conſequence with them, that they did not think it "merited the council's being incommoded with pro- "poſals of that ſort."

The 18th, a Mandarin came to me from the council, and notified to me, that his Majeſty, calling to remembrance my being at PEKIN, had given orders to the council, that I ſhould be eſcorted to JEGCHOLL by a Mandarin and ſome of the military. Whereupon I anſwered him, that I would be ready the next day, with my interpreter and two domeſticks, if they would take care to provide the relays, which I ſhould want, for the journey.

The 19th, all being ready for the journey, I left PEKIN very early in the morning.

The 21ſt, I arrived at JEGCHOLL, and repaired forthwith to the court; and having found the chamberlain of

of the Chan, who is generally an eunuch*, I prayed him, according to the cuſtom of the country, to inform himſelf, on my behalf, of the health of the Bogdoi-Chan, and to inform his Majeſty of my being there; upon which his Majeſty did me the favour of ſending to me a ſalver covered with all ſorts of new fruits, which were followed by another, charged with diverſe ſorts of meat from his kitchen; he ordered me to be told, at the ſame time, that he ſent me thoſe for my refreſhment, and that I would do well to keep my chamber the reſt of the day, to recover my fatigue from the journey. The ſame evening ſome of the Father Jeſuits being come to ſee me, told me, that the Alegada had reſolved to propoſe to the Emperor to make the caravan encamp in the deſert, near KALCHANNA, till the court ſhould return to PEKIN; ſuppoſing that ſo many of the court, and the greateſt part of the people of diſtinction, being in the country, there would be nothing to do for the caravan at PEKIN; and, that they believed, that he would not fail of requiring from me, an order to the commiſſary for that purpoſe. It

AUGUST. 1721.

* All thoſe who ſerve in the chamber of the Emperor of CHINA are eunuchs, and are either CHINESE or MONGALLS; the CHINESE nation being not leſs jealous of the ſex than other eaſtern people; but the MONGALLS, and generally all the TARTARS, are not very liable to this malady.

was

AUGUST. 1721. was eaſy to ſee, that what determined the miniſter to take this reſolution, was nothing elſe but his apprehenſions that the preſents he expected to have from the commiſſary, if he ſhould be at PEKIN at the time of his arrival, might, if he was abſent, fall into other hands. But, as this was a deſign that might be attended with very bad conſequences, and might have been the cauſe of the loſs of men, as well as the horſes belonging to the caravan, by being expoſed to the extremity of cold and famine in the deſerts, I became obliged to uſe all my efforts to render this intention of the miniſter abortive.

The 22d, being to go in the morning to court, the Emperor ſent the maſter of ceremonies to require of me paſsports for ſome Mandarins, which were to paſs the frontiers of RUSSIA; but, as I could well penetrate the grounds of their errand, I thought it my duty to refuſe the paſsports demanded. Nevertheleſs, notwithſtanding all my excuſes, which I could muſter up, to exempt me from giving them, the maſter of the ceremonies came to declare to me, in the cleareſt terms, the next day, which was

The 23d, " That the Emperor was, at one time, re-
" ſolved to ſend thoſe people away, whether I would

give

"give them paſsports or not; but that I ought to con- AUGUST.
"ſider, that, in ſuch caſe, I might expect an abſolute 1721.
"denial to every thing which I might have to propoſe."
Which convinced me, that it was abſolutely neceſſary for me, on this occaſion, to conform to his Majeſty's pleaſure, if I would retain the leaſt hopes of ſucceeding in my deſire of oppoſing the deſigns of the miniſter. For this reaſon,

On the 24th, when the maſter of the ceremonies came again to ſpeak with me on this affair, I put into his hands a letter, addreſſed to the officers commandants on our frontiers, in the form he deſired to have it; to which I joined the condition, that our caravan ſhould not be hindered from coming to PEKIN directly; and that our commiſſary ſhould, on his arrival at PEKIN, immediately be at liberty to begin his commerce, without being ſhut up, for a certain time, as had at ſome times been practiſed. The maſter of the ceremonies promiſed to ſpeak to his Majeſty about it; who had not only the goodneſs to give his conſent immediately, but he, at the ſame time, gave ſtrict orders to the preſident of the council, that he ſhould take ſpecial care that no perſon whatſoever ſhould go about in

AUGUST. 1721. any manner to interrupt the commiſſary in his buſineſs.

The 25th, a PORTUGUESE Father JESUIT, called Father MAURANO, came to me, and told me, "That there "was a perſon of quality, who, by him, made me an "offer of 10,000 laen of ſilver, till the arrival of the "caravan, which I might employ in what manner I "thought proper; and that this lord was very much "ſcandalized at the diſobliging anſwer I had received "from the council of the direction of the affairs of the "MONGALLS, in regard to the 2000 laen of ſilver which "I had required of them for the neceſſities of the cara-"van." Upon which, preſſing him to let me know who this lord might be, he told me, "That he was indeed for-"bid to let me know who this perſon was; but that he "would nevertheleſs, in confidence, own to me that it "was the 9th Prince, ſon of the Chan, who made me "this offer *." Thereupon I did not omit teſtifying, to him, how much I was touched with the generoſity of a Prince to whom I had never the honour of paying my devoirs; adding, "I ſhould never forget the good-

* The late Emperor of CHINA had 17 princes born of his ſeveral wives and concubines. There were three preſent at the firſt audience of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, who were all very well proportioned, having fine complexions, and black eyes, well formed, without the leaſt appearance of the deformities of the MONGALL nation.

"will

" will which his highneſs was pleaſed to ſhow me on AUGUST.
" this occaſion; and that I ſhould, all the days of my 1721.
" life, retain the ſame ſentiments as if I had received
" his generous offers." But the Father JESUIT having remonſtrated, " That the Prince might poſſibly think " himſelf offended if I ſhould refuſe his offer altoge- " ther;" I was obliged to accept of 1000 laen of ſilver *.

The 26th, I paid a viſit to the Father JESUITS of the FRENCH nation †; where I found the preſident of the council, who let me know, by the mouth of theſe Fathers, " That he was come from receiving the Em- " peror's orders, which were ſo favourable to our com- " merce, that there is no inſtance of the like liberty

* There is an appearance as if this was a ſnare laid for Mr. de LANGE, to render him ſuſpected by the Emperor of CHINA, who, in the deſign which he had then formed of leaving the ſucceſſion to his third ſon, could not fail of taking umbrage at the leaſt falſe ſtep which the agent of RUSSIA might happen to take on this occaſion, which might induce this monarch to conſent to his being ſent away; which was probably the whole aim of this intrigue.

† The JESUITS had great aſcendency on the late Emperor of CHINA; and, as the preſent Emperor hath been under their hands, it ought not to be doubted but he is likewiſe well affected to them, whatever may be reported to the contrary. At the firſt audience of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, the Emperor, being ſeated on the throne, had, on his left, as the place of honour, at three paces diſtance, a little advanced into the hall, three of the Princes his ſons; and, on his right, a little more advanced, the JESUITS belonging to the court; at five paces behind them, a little more advanced, were placed ſeven MONGALL Princes of the imperial houſe; and then, on the two ſides of the hall, the miniſters and grand Mandarins of the court; all ſitting croſs-legged, according to the manner of the TARTARS. By ſo remarkable a diſtinction it may, in ſome degree, be comprehended how much theſe good fathers were in favour with the Emperor.

AUGUST. 1721. "having ever been granted before in CHINA." I anſwered him, through the help of theſe Fathers, "That I had "no reaſon to doubt of the punctual execution of his "Majeſty's orders, ſince he had the goodneſs to charge "the governor-general of PEKIN with them; of whoſe "indefatigable zeal for maintaining a good underſtand-"ing between the Bogdoi Chan and the Czar, my ma-"ſter, was ſufficiently known to me." Whereupon he cauſed me to be told, "That he was not a man ca-"pable of receiving preſents from foreigners, for do-"ing them a ſervice, as many others did in ſuch caſes; "and that a ſtep of that kind would entirely prevent "him from ever having the liberty of ſpeaking to his "Majeſty again in favour of any perſon whatſoever, "ſhould it come to his Majeſty's ear; but that never-"theleſs, he believed he might reſerve to himſelf the "privilege, when he ſhould come to our houſe to buy "any thing, of being treated more favourably than o-"thers in the price." Upon which I aſſured him, "That "we ſhould always know to treat him with proper di-"ſtinction, in ſuch a caſe."

The ſame day, I deſired the maſter of the ceremonies to make my moſt humble acknowledgements to his Majeſty, for the gracious reception which he had been

been pleaſed to honour me with, during my ſtay at JEGCHOLL; and to pray his permiſſion for my returning to PEKIN; becauſe I apprehended the caravan would ſoon arrive there. He came, ſome hours after, and informed me that his Majeſty intended, the laſt day of this month, to go upon a party of hunting, in the deſert, ſome leagues from JEGCHOLL; and that I might lay hold of that opportunity of taking leave of his Majeſty, and of returning to PEKIN; he added, that his Majeſty had likeways ordered the governor of PEKIN to go thither, and deliver to me the tapeſtries he had cauſed to be made for the Czar. AUGUST. 1721.

During the reſt of my ſtay at JEGCHOLL, my table was furniſhed daily, the ſame as the firſt day of my arrival, from his Majeſty's kitchen. And they ſhowed me all the buildings and gardens of this charming place, which is certainly worthy to be the delight of ſo grand a monarch; and is infinitely ſuperior, in beauty and magnificence, to the palace at PEKIN or CZCHANZCHUMNIENNE.

The 31ſt, I had the honour of attending his Majeſty when he parted from JEGCHOLL; and, on this occaſion, he had the goodneſs to ask me, "If I enjoyed my "health." After having anſwered with all the reſpect due

AUGUST. 1721. due to ſo gracious an inquiry, he ſaid to me further, "That he thought he obſerved ſome alteration in my "countenance, and that I ought to take care of my "health." After which he gave me permiſſion to return to PEKIN, after having, by the maſter of the ceremonies, let me know, that, if the caravan had not been ſo nigh, I ſhould have had the honour of accompanying him to the party of hunting *.

SEPTEMBER.

The 3d, I was returned from my JEGCHOLL journey, being three days on the road.

The 7th, I ſent my interpreter to KALCHANNA, to the commiſſary, with 1500 laen of ſilver.

The 10th, I acquainted my Mandarin, that, as the caravan was at hand, it was moſt neceſſary that the houſe ſhould be repaired, that I might not continue under apprehenſions of the merchandiſe being damaged, for want of ſufficient cover, during the rainy autumnal ſeaſon. But he continually refuſed me the li-

* Hunting is the favourite employment of the TARTAR Pagans. And one may gather the inclination of the TARTARS from the pleaſure and aſſiduity with which the late Emperor of CHINA followed the chace; nevertheleſs he mixed much of the politician with his favourite paſſion; for going every year a-hunting, eſcorted by a body of the army, conſiſting of 50 or 60,000 men completely armed, and generally travelling 100 leagues in this manner, this monarch thereby inured his courtiers and his troops to the uſe of arms, and to fatigues; and prevented their falling into the ſoft and indolent manner of living peculiar to the CHINESE.

berty

berty of getting it repaired of myſelf, under the promiſe that he would take care to get it repaired before the arrival of the caravan. But, ſeeing one day paſs after another, and nothing done, I went, on the 15th, to the preſident, to pray him to give orders for repairing the houſe; at the leaſt, not oppoſe my doing it at my own expence. But his anſwer was, he would inſtantly hire the workmen, and it ſhould be repaired in one day. And theſe promiſes were daily repeated, as well by my Mandarin as by the preſident, till, at length, the commiſſary arrived with the caravan at PEKIN, on the 29th. As it rained very hard during that whole day, the commiſſary found, at his arrival, that there was no place where he, or any of his people, could be covered from the rain; and he was obliged to let all the baggage of the caravan remain in the court-yard, without being able to ſecure one ſingle parcel. As ſoon as the caravan was entered into my court-yard they re-inforced the guard at the gate, and poſted centinels all round the houſe, to ſecure us, as they ſaid, againſt thieves; but, in reality, to prevent our commiſſary's having any opportunities of trading with any perſon whatſoever, till ſuch time as they ſhould receive the merchandiſes, which they might pretend to have occaſion

SEPT. 1721.

SEPT. 1721. ſion for, for his Majeſty and the court. Beſides which, they ordered two Mandarins, with a clerk, to remain in our houſe, to take good care that no merchandiſe was ſold on credit, and to note down exactly the names of all that ſhould come into, or go out of, our houſe; what goods, and how much, they bought, and at what price.

OCTOBER.

In the beginning of this month I ſent again to the council, on the ſubject of the repair of our houſe. Upon which they let me know, the 6th, by a clerk, that the preſident had ſent a courier to his Majeſty, to be informed if his Majeſty would be pleaſed to have our houſe repaired by the treaſury, or if it was our buſineſs to repair it; the Emperor, by virtue of the laſt convention between the two empires, not being obliged to furniſh any thing to our people. Whereupon I patiently waited till the

12th. The workmen came, at length, to make the reparation ſo often promiſed; but it was done ſo negligently, that, when they made an end, there was little alteration for the better. The commiſſary employed the reſt of this month to unpack the goods, that he might put every thing in order againſt the time he ſhould

ſhould be permitted to begin to trade. In the mean while, we were viſited very aſſiduouſly by four Mandarins, who pretended to be deputed, from the court, to receive the merchandiſes appropriated for his Majeſty; demanding, from the commiſſary, an exact ſpecification of all the goods brought by the caravan, that they might chuſe what was neceſſary for the ſervice of the court. They were anſwered, "That they need not "expect that the commiſſary would give them a ſpeci- "fication of all he had in the caravan; but that, if "they had any orders of the court for us, they ought "to produce letters of credit addreſſed to me or the "commiſſary; or, at leaſt, to let us ſee a ſpecification of "the goods wanted, ſigned by the maſter of the ward- "robe of the Emperor, whereupon they ſhould know "if ſuch goods were in the caravan or not. But theſe gentlemen would not quit their demand ſo, alledging, "That they muſt go according to the cuſtoms obſerv- "ed in times paſt, when the commiſſary of every ca- "ravan had been obliged to give ſuch a ſpecification "to thoſe deputed by the court to receive the goods "from him; that they did not intend to be ſerved at "this time as they had been with former commiſſaries, "when the court got goods of but indifferent quality, OCTOB. 1721.

OCTOB. 1721. "after the beſt goods had been diſpoſed to private per-
"ſons; that to this end, they ſhould be careful to exa-
"mine all that the commiſſary had brought, and that
"they would take what they wanted, for the court,
"out of the beſt they could find, particularly ſables
"at 3 laen per pair, as uſual." The commiſſary, ſeeing theſe people pretend to inſiſt on his giving them goods at ſuch an under-price, craved from me the protection of the Czar, our common maſter, alledging, that he had ſables which coſt him 20 or 30 roubles the pair; and that it was eaſy to comprehend what market he ſhould make with the reſt of his goods, if he ſhould be obliged to ſell the ſables at ſuch a loſing price. Upon which I made the deputies underſtand, "That the merchandiſes of the caravan did not be-
"long to the commiſſary, nor to me; and, in caſe they
"did, it was not to be ſuppoſed that we ſhould credit
"them at all, at leaſt without their bringing a ſpeciſi-
"cation in form, ſigned by the perſon who hath the
"ſuperintendance of theſe affairs at court. But that
"did not ſignify, they had only to bring their money,
"and, when the commiſſary had ſhown them the goods,
"he would ſee if he could agree with them." Theſe gentlemen ſeemed to take offence at this anſwer. Nevertheleſs,

vertheleſs, they engaged, at laſt, to bring ſuch a ſpeci- OCTOB.
fication; but they deferred it from one day to another. 1721.
In the mean time, they made uſe of all their cunning to prevail on us to deliver them, at an under-price, all the goods they thought fit to take.

NOVEMBER.

The 1ſt of this month, having ſent my interpreter to the council, to deſire them to admit the commiſſary to the liberty of trading, they let me know, in anſwer,

"That it was impoſſible to do it, before the depu-
"ties of the court had received the goods they had to
"receive for his Majeſty."

The 4th, I ſpoke of this affair, not only with my Mandarin, but alſo with the Kientu, or Mandarins appointed to our houſe, to the end that they ſhould diſpoſe thoſe people to give us their ſpecification, in order to end this affair. The ſame day I went to meet his Majeſty, who was returning from the hunting; and met him on the 5th, at 80 ly from PEKIN, at the hot-baths of TANGZCHANG. His Majeſty told me, "That
"he had received news from EUROPE, that his Czariſh
"Majeſty had made peace with SWEDEN, by the me-
"diation of the ROMAN Emperor." After which, he asked me, "How long the caravan had been arrived?"

NOVEM. 1721. Upon which I anſwered, "That they were, indeed, "ſince the 29th of September at PEKIN; but the com- "miſſary had not yet got permiſſion to trade." Upon which his Majeſty, diſmiſſing me, went to the bath.

I muſt, on this occaſion, acquaint the reader with the cuſtom of this empire, in ſuch circumſtances as this of the deputies above-mentioned. All the Mandarins that are charged with any commiſſion of the court, be it to ſubjects or foreigners, are named and diſpatched by the miniſtry. When ſuch commiſſion is finiſhed, theſe people are obliged to make preſents, not only to the miniſters, but alſo to the Princes of the blood, to the end that they may not give them too much trouble, and that they may keep ſomething to themſelves. They have no cauſe to fear that the people, with whom they have to do on theſe miſſions, will find acceſs to the miniſters, or that ever a ſerious inquiry will be made into their conduct; which is ſo true, that no perſon will readily undertake to make complaints of their tricks, becauſe there is no reparation to be expected. No perſon can carry his complaints directly to the Emperor, but they muſt abſolutely be made by the miniſters, or thoſe who hold the firſt office of the palace, or the chamber of his Majeſty; and

theſe

theſe gentlemen are ſo cloſely linked to the intereſts of the other great lords of the empire, that, whatever party the ſufferer may addreſs himſelf to, he will certainly remain the dupe of the affair. NOVEM. 1721.

The ſame day, the deputies endeavoured again to get ſome goods from us, while the ſpecification might be made out; but their deſign did not take effect.

The 9th, I ſpoke again to the Mandarins of the council, concerning our caravan; but I could get no other anſwer, but that this affair regarded the deputies of the court only.

The 14th, when I would have gone out myſelf to the council, the guard, at our gate, ſtopped me, under pretext that the four Mandarins, deputies from the court, had ordered, that no perſon ſhould be ſuffered to go out till the goods, which they ought to have for the court, were firſt delivered. Though I paſſed in ſpite of the guard, I was nevertheleſs obliged to return without doing any thing, as the preſident was not in the city.

The 15th, I ſent my interpreter to the council to receive the reſolution of the preſident, upon what I had repreſented the day before; and as he found him not there, but was told he was at home, he went thither

NOVEM. 1721. ther to ſpeak with him, and brought me the anſwer following, " That the preſident would take care that " this affair ſhould be ended out of hand; that to this " end it was nevertheleſs neceſſary, that the commiſſa- " ry ſhould put a reaſonable price upon his goods." He deſired further my interpreter to tell me, that, at this ſeaſon, he was rarely at home; becauſe he was obliged to be all day long at CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE attending his Majeſty; that when I ſhould have any affair to propoſe to him, I ſhould communicate the ſame, by my interpreter, to the Mandarins of the council, who would not fail making him the neceſſary report immediately.

The 16th, the deputy Mandarins having made up, according to their own fancy, a ſpecification of merchandiſes to be received by them for the proviſion of his Majeſty and the court, they came to preſent it to us, in order, by means of this impoſition, to get a large parcel of goods from us.

But the 17th, this ſpecification being tranſlated into the RUSS language, we found that the quantity of merchandiſe which they demanded, was much too large to be agreed to. For which reaſon, it was asked of them, " From whom this ſpecification was ſent to us? and

" who

"who had made it out?" Upon which, after many turns, and tergiverſations employed to no purpoſe, they were at length forced to acknowledge that it was of their own forming; it being their opinion, that ſuch a quantity would be wanting for the uſe of the court. But, in making this avowal, they did not fail to make the commiſſary apprehend, "That he need not flatter himſelf with a liberty of trading, with any perſon, before "they ſhould receive all that was contained in the ſpecification." NOVEM. 1721.

The 18th, the Alegada being come to our houſe to buy ſome goods, I beſought him to remember the promiſes which his Majeſty had been ſo good to make to Mr. de ISMAYLOFF on the ſubject of freedom of commerce, ſeeing, that by the courſe which affairs took at preſent, it looked as if they were entirely forgot. But he gave me for an anſwer to all, "That it was an affair that did not in the leaſt regard him, and that I "had none but the council to addreſs myſelf to*."

* In CHINA all is done by the diſpoſition of different colleges, to whoſe cognizance the affairs may belong; it not being permitted to addreſs the court directly, upon any affair whatever. In the time of the laſt CHINESE Emperor, theſe colleges were ſo abſolute, that, on many occaſions, the Emperor himſelf dared not meddle with their decrees; but, ſince the TARTAR Princes have been in poſſeſſion of the throne of CHINA, they are not much regarded; witneſs the exerciſe of all ſorts of foreign religions publickly authoriſed, and the allowance of a RUSSIAN agent at PEKIN, agreed to by the ſole good pleaſure of the Emperor, in oppoſition to the remonſtrances of his miniſters, and to the conſtitution of the government of CHINA.

The

NOVEM. 1721. The 22d, I ſent my interpreter to the council with a memorial on the ſubject of this affair; but the Mandarins he found there refuſed to receive it, under the pretext, that they muſt have before-hand the orders of the preſident thereupon, and know, from him, whether they ſhould receive it or not.

The ſame day the four deputies, being come to ſee us, gave us to underſtand, " That the uſual time of " keeping the commiſſary at home being nigh finiſh- " ed, they were come to commence a trade with him, " and to know how much he demanded for each ſort " of merchandiſe, to the end, that, after they had fi- " niſhed their bargain with him, they might then de- " clare our houſe free for every body to enter." Whereupon I demanded of them, " Who could have au- " thoriſed them to ſhut up, in the manner uſual with " ſlaves, for any time, the ſubjects of ſo potent a mo- " narch as was the Czar my maſter?" But theſe gentlemen, not finding it proper to anſwer ſo tickliſh a queſtion, contented themſelves with ſaying, " That it " would be well for the commiſſary to reſolve to give " them the merchandiſe they required, and that at a " reaſonable price, unleſs he would, out of wantonneſs, " involve himſelf in expences which would much ex-

ceed

" ceed the profit he thought to make by his obſtinacy; NOVEM.
" and that, in the ſituation he was, being obliged to 1721.
" feed his people at his own expence, he acted directly
" contrary to his own intereſts, not to cloſe affairs with
" them." Thereupon I deſired to know, " If they had
" orders to preſs us, in ſo violent a manner, to deliver
" them the merchandiſes." Upon which they anſwered, " No; and that they were come to deal with the
" commiſſary; but that he muſt let them have the beſt
" goods at ſuch prices as the court always paid." The commiſſary, to make his laſt effort, offered them merchandiſes, of the ſame quality as thoſe which the court had received at other times, without advancing the price; but that did not cloſe the affair. They went away, ſaying they would conſult together, to ſee if it was feaſible for them to augment the price of the goods above that which the court had always given.

Soon after they came from the council to enquire for my interpreter, to communicate to him the anſwer of the preſident concerning my memorial. Upon which I ſent him directly with the ſaid memorial; no way doubting, but, after what the preſident had himſelf told him, it would be received at once. But, on his return, he acquainted me, that the preſident had ordered a Manda-

NOVEM. 1721. rin to let me know the anſwer; which I wrote, word for word, from the mouth of my interpreter. "I applied to "the Allegamba on the ſubject of the memorial of the "agent, and he not only forbid us to receive the ſaid "memorial, but alſo charged me to tell the agent that "which he had formerly told Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, viz. "That commerce is looked upon by us with contempt, "and as a very trifling object; that the agent himſelf "was not ignorant, that we had long refuſed to admit "the preſent caravan, and moſt certainly ſhould never "have conſented to its admittance into CHINA, if his "Majeſty had not ſuffered himſelf to be perſuaded to "it, at the reiterated inſtances of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF." "That the Allegamba had, at the ſame time, added "theſe words, "Theſe merchants come here to enrich "themſelves, not our people, which is eaſy to be ſeen, "becauſe they pretend themſelves to fix the price of "their own goods, that they may ſell them the dearer. "For theſe reaſons, go tell the agent, that we ſhall "not only refuſe to receive the ſaid memorial, but that, "in future, he need not give himſelf the trouble of "propoſing any thing to us that may be relative to "commerce, becauſe we will not embarraſs ourſelves "hereafter with the merchants of RUSSIA." Where-

upon

upon our confinement continued much the ſame as before; inſomuch, that it was only permitted to the domeſticks of the firſt miniſter, of the preſident, and a clerk of the wardrobe, to enter our houſe; which they did very frequently, and in all appearance, to ſpy what paſſed in our quarters; in hopes that we ſhould be obliged, at length, to ſubmit our trade to their diſcretion. NOVEM. 1721.

The 25th, I underſtood that the brigadier, who, till that time, had the charge of the guard at our houſe, was reſtored to the good graces of the Emperor; and that his Majeſty had made him grand marſhal of the court, with the command in chief of the army which this monarch keeps in the country of the MONGALLS*. Whereupon I repaired immediately to his houſe, to pay my compliments; and having found an opportunity, at the ſame time, of acquainting him with what had paſ-

* The MONGALLS are TARTAR Pagans, who dwell to the north of CHINA. They are divided into two branches, of which the firſt is that of the Eaſtern, or of the Northern MONGALLS, or the NIEUCHU, who inhabit towards the coaſts of the ſea of JAPAN, between the river AMOOR and the Grand Wall; theſe are the natural ſubjects of the TARTAR-houſe which at preſent fills the throne of CHINA; and are the very people, who, in the laſt century, made themſelves maſters of the empire of CHINA; they are brought up in extreme groſs idolatry, and have in a manner no religion; they, for the greateſt part, dwell in towns and villages, and apply themſelves to agriculture. The ſecond branch is that of the Weſtern MONGALLS, otherwiſe called CALCHIES; theſe laſt are only under the protection of CHINA, without being entirely ſubjects, having their own proper Chan; they live in tents, and ſubſiſt by their cattle, without cultivating their lands. Their religion is the worſhip of the Delay-Lama.

NOVEM. 1721. ſed regarding the four Mandarins deputed from the court; he gave me his word that he would go to court that day, to inform himſelf circumſtantially of that affair; and that, afterwards, he would order them to receive what might be abſolutely neceſſary for his Majeſty and the court without further delay. He, at the ſame time, ſeemed to be extremely ſurpriſed at the conduct of his brother the Allegamba on this occaſion.

The 27th, the firſt miniſter, being come to our houſe, told me, "That he underſtood the interdict on "our houſe was not taken off, and deſired me to ac- "quaint him with the cauſe of it." Upon which I made anſwer, "That I had, for a long time, endea- "voured to find it out; but I could find no perſon who "would ſeem to know it. Nevertheleſs it muſt, in "time, be cleared up; ſeeing it was a notorious inju- "ſtice, to keep a caravan ſhut up ſo long, that came "upon the faith of treaties ſolemnly ratified." He replied thereupon, "That the court, for a long time, "reſolved to admit no caravans, becauſe all the mer- "chants, who had traded with the RUSSES, were reduced "to the loweſt ebb, by the very great quantity of RUSS "goods which were at preſent in CHINA; that it was on "the very ſtrong inſtances which Mr. de ISMAYLOFF

"had

" had made, as well to the court as to the council; of- NOVEM.
" fering, for this purpoſe, that the commiſſary and his 1721.
" people ſhould ſubſiſt, for the future, at their own
" expence; that, in the end, they had admitted the
" preſent caravan; that the commiſſary, ſo far from
" having any regard to theſe circumſtances, refuſed
" now to take the uſual prices, that had been offered
" him, for the merchandiſe which the court had occa-
" ſion for, and inſiſted on a very high price for them;
" That he wiſhed I would bring the commiſſary to rea-
" ſon in this affair, and let him know the reſult." Upon
which I told him, " That I had nothing to do with
" putting a new price on goods which the commiſſary
" had in commiſſion; that it did not depend on me,
" as it was the commiſſary who was to account for the
" goods with which he was entruſted, who would not
" permit any other, beſides himſelf who ſold them, to
" ſet a price; that, as to what regarded the admiſſion
" of the caravan, it was ſtipulated long before Mr. de
" ISMAYLOFF's arrival at PEKIN, and there could not
" the leaſt alteration be made in it, without ſhaking
" the foundations of the treaties concluded between
" the two empires; and ſuppoſing any alteration was
" to be made, it could not be done but by mutual

con-

NOVEM. 1721. "conſent, and after deputies, appointed for this pur-
"poſe, by the two empires, ſhould have examined this
"affair to the bottom, and made a new plan of con-
"vention." This anſwer ſeemed to nettle the miniſter, who broke up the converſation, and ordered the commiſſary to ſhow him ſome goods.

DECEMBER.

The four Mandarins, deputed from the court, finding, at length, that we rather choſe to have our confinement continue, than to ſubmit to their unreaſonable pretenſions; and that, on the other hand, the grand marſhal of the court intereſted himſelf ſtrongly in our favour, and would abſolutely have an end of this affair, the interdict on our houſe was at laſt taken off. And,

The 2d of this month, the council made publication, that it was permitted to all perſons to come and trade with us; but they uſed one piece of chicanery, which hurt us much, and really kept off all the merchants; for when they perceived the merchants began to reſort to our houſe, they made known to them, "That no perſon ſhould carry out the leaſt thing, of "what they bought at our houſe, without ſhowing it "firſt to the four Mandarins-deputies, to the end that

"they

"they might take what they found proper for the uſe DECEMB.
"of the court." This notification took away from the 1721.
merchants all deſire of trading with us; ſeeing they were aſſured of being great ſufferers if they were obliged to paſs through the hands of theſe greedy Mandarins; which made me acquainted, more than any thing elſe, with the miſery of the profeſſion of a merchant in CHINA; who are obliged to depend on the diſcretion of Mandarins and ſoldiers, who have none. But the Poyamba or grand marſhal of the court, having been informed of it, had the goodneſs to remedy this new grievance; ordering the Mandarins not to take any thing, for the uſe of the court, from any other perſon than from the commiſſary. For this purpoſe he ſent, at the ſame time, his ſteward with them, to the commiſſary, to tell him, "That he came with them, by order "of his maſter, to ſee how much, and what ſorts of "merchandiſes theſe gentlemen would take, to the end "that they might make him an exact report." Whereupon they were ſhown the goods; but they acted ſo much upon the reſerve, in preſence of this man, that they took in all but a very middling parcel of goods. Nevertheleſs, this did not prevent their repairing every day to our houſe, to take from the CHINESE merchants

what

DECEMB. 1721. what goods they thought proper. And the more to counteract our trade, the miniſtry had repreſented to the Emperor, that there had been brought, during many years, from year to year, into his Majeſty's magazines of fur, a much greater quantity of ſables than were neceſſary for the conſumption of the court; and that, as this quantity augmented annually, it was better that his Majeſty ſhould order ſome of them to be ſold, than to let them lye and ſpoil.

The 12th, 13th, and 14th, many CHINESE merchants, and other perſons from the great houſes, and ordinary people of PEKIN, having come to our houſe, ventured to buy ſome ſquirrel-skins, and other goods of ſmall value, in order to diſcover the true deſigns of the Mandarins who kept themſelves at our houſe; they did not oppoſe them until they had fixed their bargains; but, when the bargains were concluded, they ſignified to them, that they were not to carry out any of the things they had bought, till they ſhould chuſe the beſt of what they had for the court.

The 15th, as they were appriſed at the court and council, that we had begun to trade, they publiſhed that they would ſell, at reaſonable prices, 20,000 ſables out of the fur-magazines of the Emperor; whereupon

upon all thoſe who had begun to trade with us went to ſupply themſelves there; ſome for fear of the chicanery of the Mandarins, others in hopes of buying cheaper there than with us. In ſhort, they ſold, by what I could afterwards learn, the beſt ſables at 2 ½ laen, middling at 1 ½ laen to 1, and the leaſt at 90 fun; but theſe were not SIBERIA ſables, but thoſe of the TONGUSES*, under the dominions of CHINA, taken about the border of the river AMOOR†; of which they furniſh annually a quantity to the magazines of his Majeſty. The country whence theſe ſables are brought is called SOLLONI. DECEMB. 1721.

The 16th, I was informed, that, notwithſtanding the court had conſented to a free commerce, between the two nations, free of all duties, the Mandarins belonging to our houſe, had given the ſtricteſt orders to our guard, not to let any the leaſt thing, of any kind, be brought into our houſe without producing a billet

* The TONGUSES are a Pagan people of the north of ASIA, who are very probably the deſcendents of TARTARS; they occupy a great proportion of the eaſtern parts of SIBERIA; and ſome branches of this people extend themſelves even to the ſouthern banks of the river AMOOR; the laſt party of the TONGUSES is ſubject to CHINA; all the other TONGUSES are ſubjects of RUSSIA. *Vide Hiſtoire Genealog. des* TARTARES.

† The river AMOOR is one of the largeſt rivers in ASIA; it takes its riſe in the country of the MONGALLS, near the river SELINGA, and running from thence eaſtward, it makes the frontier of theſe parts, between Eaſtern SIBERIA and the Oriental MONGALLS; and, after a courſe of more than 300 GERMAN leagues, it diſcharges itſelf into the ſea of JAPAN, in lat. 44 degrees north.

DECEMB. 1721. from them; and ſuch a billet coſt them 30 zſchoffes, which make about 4 ſun. But thoſe who would have free ingreſs and egreſs, to our houſe to trade, were obliged, once for all, to make a fixed agreement with them, either for a certain limited time, or for the whole time we might ſtay at PEKIN; upon which they received a billet, which intitled them to come into, and go out of our houſe as often as they pleaſed. All thoſe who refuſed to pay in this manner, for the freedom of entry into our houſe, were ſent back, as people who came to our houſe to borrow, or perhaps to ſteal on occaſion.

The 17th, my Mandarin being come to ſee me, I told him, "That I was very glad to learn, that the "court had alſo begun to enter into trade; which they "had before looked upon as ſo contemptible a thing "with them, that they always reproached us with the "little importance of it; that, ſince his Majeſty had "given ſuch authentick marks of the eſteem he had "for commerce, I hoped, that in time to come, they "would ſpeak of it with more circumſpection." Whereupon he replied, "That it was not with a view of inte-"reſt that the Emperor had ordered the ſables to be "ſold, that I ſpoke of; but that the ſale was made

"purely,

" purely, becauſe, having ſo great a quantity of them DECEMB.
" in his magazines, he thought it better to order them 1721.
" to be ſold, than that they ſhould ly there till rotten."
I thereupon told him, " That if, at the court of his
" Czariſh Majeſty, and in his empire, they could make
" uſe of all the furs which the country furniſhed, they
" would probably ſee very few of them in CHINA." After which, I demanded of him, " If it was with the
" knowledge of the Emperor that the Mandarins, pla-
" ced at our gate, ſold, to the people who had buſineſs
" with us, permits of paſſage, in and out; and abſolute-
" ly denyed entrance, to our houſe, to thoſe who would
" not pay for thoſe permits?" I would likewiſe be informed by him, " What was the meaning that the 4
" Mandarins, deputies of the court, were continually
" in our houſe?" His anſwer to which was, " That the
" Emperor knew nothing of it, nor did any perſon dare
" to tell him of it; the Alegada having given them
" leave to ſell ſuch permits, as a ſmall caſual profit:
" that, as to the Mandarin deputies, they were igno-
" rant of the conſequence of what they did." Whereupon I told him, at the concluſion, " That I did not
" comprehend why the miniſters were ſo averſe to us
" in every thing, even to the refuſing to ſee us, or re-

DECEMB. 1721. "ceive our memorials; that I wiſhed, with all my heart, "that they ſhould not carry it ſo far, as to oblige me "to carry my complaints to the perſon of the Bogdoi-"Chan direct; and further, that I asked nothing but "what was conform to treaties, and that if the treaties "were to ſubſiſt in their full force, between the two "empires, there was an abſolute neceſſity to hear what "I had to ſay, and to give ſuch reſolutions as they "ſhould think proper, upon the memorials which I "ſhould, from time to time, preſent them on the oc-"caſion."

The latter end of this month, his Majeſty made a tour to CAISA, which is a palace, with a fine park, ſome lys to the ſouth of PEKIN, where he paſſed ſome weeks; which was the occaſion that nothing remarkable paſſed, during this time, between the miniſters and me.

JANUARY, 1722.

The 15th of this month the guard, at our gate, refuſed entrance to ſome carts of hay, which my people had bought, becauſe the peaſants had not billets of paſſage, and they would not give any thing to the ſoldiers; and notwithſtanding I ſent to advertiſe the Mandarins, and officers who commanded the guard at our gate,

gate, of this inſolence of the guard, they, notwithſtanding, drove away the peaſants with their hay. I complained of it to my Mandarin, but to little purpoſe. JANUAR. 1722.

The 16th, after having received the news of the perpetual peace, concluded between his Czariſh Majeſty and the OTTOMAN PORTE, I cauſed Te Deum to be ſung in the church of ST. NICOLAS, and celebrated the reſt of the day in feſtivity.

FEBRUARY.

The 2d of this month, and according to cuſtom, I offered ſome preſents to his Majeſty on the new year, which is a ceremony that muſt be obſerved by every perſon, veſted with any publick character, unleſs he would expoſe himſelf to a general cenſure. His Majeſty received my little preſents very graciouſly, and preſented me, in return, with ſome of all the ſorts of game he had taken at the hunting the laſt autumn*, and of a good number of ſheep; and it is in this manner that his Majeſty is accuſtomed to regale annually, at the cloſe of the year, thoſe people of his court that he would diſtinguiſh.

The 4th, which is the laſt day of the CHINESE year,

* The MONGALLS, and other Pagan TARTARS, have a particular method for drying all ſorts of fleſh, by the air and the ſun, which entirely prevents their periſhing; by which means they keep wild fowl from one year to another.

the

FEBR. 1722. the court ended the year with a feaſt; which was very ſhort, becauſe his Majeſty was but juſt recovered from a fit of illneſs, which he had laboured under. On this occaſion, I had the honour of ſitting over-againſt his Majeſty, at ſome diſtance from the throne; and this place is a little below the ſeat of the Princes of the blood, but above that of the Mandarins of the firſt claſs. The feaſt being finiſhed, and his Majeſty retired, the maſter of ceremonies came to tell me, that I might be diſpenſed with coming the next day, being new year's-day, to court, to pay my compliments to his Majeſty; ſeeing it was the cuſtom of the Princes of the blood, and Mandarins of the empire, to be all ranged in the court of the caſtle that day, every one according to his rank; where, as I was a foreigner, I could have no rank.

The 14th, the firſt miniſter gave me, and the commiſſary a dinner; on which occaſion there paſſed nothing remarkable, unleſs that he asked me, "If I was "not to return with the caravan?" Which made me think they had already ſettled this affair at court, I anſwered him thereupon, "That it did not depend on "my pleaſure to leave the court, where the Czar, my maſter,

"maſter, had ſent me to reſide, till he ſhould recall "me." FEBR. 1722.

The 18th and 19th, his Majeſty cauſed the celebration of the feaſt of Lanthorns, which had been annually celebrated, at the court of CHINA, for above 2000 years. This feaſt was ſolemnized at CZCHAN-ZCHUM-NIENNE with great magnificence. During the grand entertainment, which was that day at court, they repreſented all ſorts of plays, and other diverting ſhows; and, at night, they exhibited grand fire-works, which, joined to ſo many illuminations, and to the prodigious quantity of lanthorns, adorned with figures, and diverſified with all ſorts of colours, cauſed a ſurpriſing agreeable view, during the darkneſs of the night*. They placed me, on this occaſion, the ſame as they did the laſt time at PEKIN, at the diſtance of ſome paces from the Emperor's throne.

The 20th, being returned to PEKIN, ſome of the principal of the KOREA merchants came to ſee me; but when they would have entered my apartment, ſome of

* The CHINESE are accuſtomed to be at very great expence at this feſtival, in fire-works, and in lanthorns, having lanthorns that will coſt them 10,000 taen, and upwards. The fire of their rockets are alſo remarkably beautiful, the variety and livelineſs of their colours ſurpaſs the EUROPEAN performances ſo much, that we are obliged to own, they excel us in theſe performances.

the

FEBR. 1722. the ſoldiers, who accompanied them, oppoſed it; and they narrowly eſcaped the laſh of the ſoldiers whips, who had lifted them againſt thoſe merchants. Upon which, I preſently ordered them to be kept, by our people, in the court before my houſe, to wait there till the merchants ſhould go out of my houſe. And I, at the ſame time, gave them to underſtand, that they for the future would do wiſely not to make uſe of their whips at my houſe. After which the merchants indeed entered into my apartment, but dared not make any ſtay there; for fear of being inſulted by the ſoldiers that eſcorted them*. The civility with which I received them, and to which they had not been uſed with the CHINESE, made them have a deſire of being more acquainted with me. For they came again on the 22d, before my houſe, but the guard at the gate refuſed them entrance.

* The CHINESE being accuſtomed to treat the inhabitants of KOREA with great roughneſs, and having prohibited them all correſpondence with foreign nations, it is not to be expected that they ſhould relax their hard treatment of them, for the ſake of a miniſter of the court of RUSSIA; which is as it were the only power who could ſupport the inhabitants of KOREA, if they ſhould ever be deſirous of throwing off the CHINESE yoke; ſeeing, that, by the river AMOOR, the RUSSES could fall down into the ports of KOREA, without a poſſibility of the CHINESE hindering them. And it is not impoſſible but this conduct of Mr. LANGE might have been one cauſe of the court of CHINA's ſudden reſolution of ordering him to leave the country.

MARCH.

MARCH.

During this month, we continued our trade as much as the Mandarins, and ſoldiers of our guard, would permit. There paſſed nothing elſe remarkable, unleſs that the commiſſary having ſent a clerk of the caravan towards the deſerts, to ſee in what condition the horſes were, which were left there in their way to PEKIN; he reported to us, that they were all in very bad plight; and that if we did not, out of hand, ſend money, that they might be put into ſtables, there was danger of the greateſt part of them dying.

APRIL.

The 6th of this month, I ſent my interpreter, at the deſire of the commiſſary, to the Mandarins which were placed at our houſe on account of the caravan, and let them know, that the commiſſary being obliged to ſend one of his people with money, towards the deſert, in order that the people, who had the charge of the horſes of the caravan, ſhould be enabled to put them into ſtables, he would, for the greater ſecurity, have occaſion for ſome ſoldiers, or ſome others, to eſcort this man; and I prayed their care of this affair. Whereupon they returned me anſwer, that they would

APRIL. 1722. make their report to the council; for, without their orders, they could do nothing in it.

The 7th, two Mandarins, accompanied by a clerk, came to bring me an anſwer, from the preſident, on this affair; and, it being wrote on a ſheet of paper, they read the ſame to me in the following terms.

" The Allegamba having been informed yeſterday, " that you wanted to ſend a meſſage again towards the " deſerts, could not but imagine that it was for ſome " other buſineſs than that of horſes, that your people " made ſuch frequent journies between the deſerts and " PEKIN; this gives him reaſon to think, that, by the " help of the MONGALLS, you carry on a ſecret intelli- " gence between this city and SELINGINSKY, which " may give birth to complaints and threats between " the two empires; for he is not ignorant, that the " MONGALLS are a people capable of engaging in ſuch " affairs, and that the RUSSES do not grudge money on " ſuch occaſions." I asked them thereupon, " Whe- " ther this anſwer was from the Allegamba, or whether " it was their own compoſition." Upon which they aſ- ſured me, that they wrote it, word for word, the ſame that the Allegamba gave them; and that it was for

the

the ſame reaſon he would not conſent to the ſending the perſon, as deſired. APRIL. 1722.

After this explanation, I thought neceſſary, for my greater ſecurity, to deſire them to acquaint the Allegamba, on my behalf, "That the precaution he took "was not right to take, unleſs with priſoners, or unleſs "he had any intercepted letter to produce, by which "he could convict me of having ſought to embroil the "two empires; that bearing, as I did, a publick cha-"racter, I might write, as often as I pleaſed, without "having any occaſion either of the eſcort, or the con-"ſent of the preſident; and the ſame, if I had a cou-"rier to diſpatch for my private affairs, as he could not "prevent it without an open violence." I ſent forthwith my interpreter to the council, with the Mandarins, to know the determination of this miniſter. But he ſent me word, that he had no deſire to employ the horſes and the people of the army of the Emperor, his maſter, in our ſervice, on journies which muſt cauſe them to be at expences for which they were not furniſhed by their ordinary pay. Upon which I made him the propoſal of being ourſelves at the expence of the people for the eſcort which he ſhould grant us, and that we would alſo mount them on our own horſes, that

APRIL. 1722.

they might have no occaſion for the Emperor's; or, if that was ſtill not ſatisfactory, I would only demand a paſſport, and would run the risk of ſending one of our own people without an eſcort. But he continued firm in his denial, and would not allow of one or other of the expedients; contenting himſelf with letting me know, once for all, "That he would do nothing in it." I learnt, at the ſame time, from my interpreter, that they had reaſoned among themſelves, on this occaſion, in much the following manner; "Theſe foreigners "come here with their commerce, to encumber us e- "very moment with a thouſand petty affairs, pretend- "ing that they ought to be favoured, on all occaſions, "no more nor leſs than if they laid an obligation on us; "and yet, we are ſtill to receive the firſt anſwer from "them on the ſubject of our affairs."

The 16th, I underſtood, that, ſome weeks ago, the Tuſh-du Chan of the MONGALLS* who encamp

* This is the name of the preſent Chan of the Weſtern MONGALLS. This Chan was heretofore ſovereign; but, ſince the Eaſtern MONGALLS have poſſeſſed themſelves of CHINA, he put himſelf under the protection of that empire; in order to be the better able to make head againſt the KALMUCKS, with whom they are, in a manner, at continual war. He is a very powerful prince; his dominions, on the weſtern ſide, reach to the banks of the great river YENISEY, and even from thence, on the other ſide of this river, towards the ſources of the OBY; and, on the other ſide, towards the eaſt, they reach to the Great wall. The Chan of the Weſtern MONGALLS hath a great many petty Chans of this nation for his vaſſals, and can bring 100,000 men, or more, into the field, all cavalry; but his ſoldiers fall far ſhort of the KALMUCKS ſoldiery.

at

at URGA, had brought complaints to the court, of the ill conduct of the RUSS merchants who came to URGA; and that he had, at the ſame time, adverti ſed the miniſtry, that there never had been ſo great a concourſe of RUSS and CHINESE merchants at his reſidence, as in this year; that, thereupon, his Majeſty had taken a reſolution to ſend a Mandarin with orders to the Chan to chaſe out all the merchants, as well RUSSES as CHINESE, from URGA, without letting it appear that it was done by order of his Majeſty; but that it ſhould appear as the proper act of the Tuſh-du-Chan, as maſter of his own country. APRIL. 1722.

The ſame day, a courier, who was lately arrived from SELINGINSKY, with diſpatches from the Mandarin who reſided there, told my interpreter, that the intendant of SELINGINSKY had tendered ſeveral packets of letters, that came from RUSSIA, to this Mandarin, in order to be forwarded to the council of the affairs of the MONGALLS at PEKIN; but he refuſed to receive them, becauſe the intendant could not acquaint him with their contents.

M A Y.

The 4th of this month, two Mandarins of the council, accompanied with three clerks and two officers of

our

MAY. 1722. our guard, being come to my apartment at 11 o'clock at night, informed me, that the Allegamba, being returned from court, wanted to ſpeak with me on an affair of conſequence; and becauſe he was employed, during the day-time, from morning till night, he prayed me to give myſelf the trouble of coming to him, though it was late at night. I was a-bed when the meſſage came to me; however I made no difficulty of riſing, to comply with this miniſter's deſire; the more, as the Mandarins aſſured me that the buſineſs he wanted to ſpeak with me about was a very preſſing affair. When I came to his houſe I was received with remarkable civility, and the Allegamba being come in perſon to meet me, even to the court, he led me to his apartment, and deſired me to ſit down by him. He then began to make excuſes, that, in ſo long a time, he had not been able to ſee me at his own houſe, or in other places; but that he ſuppoſed I was not ignorant that he was obliged to be every day, from morning till night, with his Majeſty, at CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE. Upon which I replied, that his excuſe was unanſwerable; and that I commiſerated his being obliged to paſs his time in ſo fatiguing a manner. After many other reciprocal compliments of this nature, he demanded

manded of me, "If it was long ſince I had any news "from SELINGINSKY." I anſwered, "That it was "ſome time ſince I had any." In the end, the affair which he was about diſcovered itſelf, by little and little, when he asked me, "If I remembered that when I "would lately diſpatch a meſſenger, by KALCHANNA, "towards the deſert, he had told me that he could not "conſent to it, becauſe he apprehended, that, by ſuch "means, ſecret correſpondence might be carried on, "which might bring on ſome miſunderſtanding be-"tween the two empires." I told him thereupon, "That I did remember that, and the reſt of the unex-"pected anſwer he then gave me; but, not having e-"ver been able to gueſs whence ſuch ſuſpicion could "ariſe, he would infinitely oblige me, if he would pleaſe "to ſpeak a little more intelligibly on this affair." Whereupon he replied, "We apprehend you have in-"telligence of our deſerters, which you do not think "fit to communicate to us *." Thereupon I remon-

MAY. 1722.

* The TONGUSES, as well as the MONGALLS, and other people of TARTAR extraction, who inhabit on the confines of RUSSIA and CHINA, are accuſtomed to deſert very often, by hundreds of families, from the lands of one empire to thoſe of the other, according as their caprice or intereſt prompts them; which is often the ſubject of altercations between the two empires. In order to remedy theſe inconveniences, it was agreed in the laſt treaty, that, for the future, ſuch deſerters ſhould not be received by either power, but ſhould honeſtly be returned to the place from whence they came. From this article the CHINESE pretend a right to reproach the RUSSES with not act-

ſtrated,

MAY. 1722. ſtrated, "That, if he would pleaſe to conſider the vaſt "diſtance between ST. PETERSBURG and PEKIN, he "would himſelf judge whether it was poſſible for the "courier, diſpatched on this affair, to be returned al-"ready, unleſs he could fly; that, as to the reſt, he "himſelf knew that affairs of ſuch conſequence were "not the buſineſs of a day, and required other things "to adjuſt them than ſecret correſpondence." He ſhook his head at this anſwer, becauſe there was then a report current at PEKIN, that orders were arrived at SELINGINSKY, from the Czar, not to reſtore the deſerters before ſpoken of. Some moments afterwards he asked me, "If I would communicate to him the news, when "I ſhould receive my letters." Upon which I aſſured him, "That I ſhould conceal nothing from him, whe-"ther it regarded him in particular, or regarded the "court; ſeeing ſuch affairs could not be communi-"cated to me, but by expreſs orders of the Czar, my "maſter; which, whatever deſire I might have, I dared "not keep ſecret." This miniſter, not thinking he had yet ſufficient reaſon to be ſatisfied, demanded a-

ing candidly, in deferring ſo long the reſtitution of 700 families of their ſubjects, which went over to the RUSSIAN territories ſince the concluſion of this treaty; and the RUSSES, on their ſide, alſo reclaim a good number of families, and inſiſt on its being equitable to come to a liquidation of their reciprocal pretenſions.

new

new of me, "If, when I ſhould receive private letters, MAY.
"I would let him have a copy?" I anſwered thereupon, 1722.
"That it was certainly the firſt time, ſince the world
"began, ſuch a propoſal was made; but that I could
"not believe that he ſpoke in earneſt on this occaſion,
"although it was a little too late for raillery." This anſwer being not altogether ſuch as he hoped for, he changed, for ſome time, the diſcourſe, by ſaying, "That "he had an intention of telling his Majeſty, that the "caravan was almoſt ready to depart; and of receiv-"ing, at the ſame time, his orders with regard to my "perſon." Whereupon I deſired him "To put his Ma-"jeſty in mind of the affair, on the ſubject of which I "had ſo often made inſtances to him." At length he began to talk to me of my ſtay at PEKIN, ſaying, "That "the term which was agreed with Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, "for my ſtay at this court, wanted little of being ex-"pired." And he made me fully to comprehend, that I ought to prepare to return with the caravan. Upon which we diſputed together long enough, and I told him, on this occaſion, "That if he would pleaſe to "remember that I aſſiſted on all the conferences that "were held on this ſubject; that I had read, and had "in my cuſtody, all the correſpondence of Mr. de IS-

MAY. 1722. "MAYLOFF, with the council, about his negotiations; "and, that I was at all the audiences which his Maje- "ſty had granted to that miniſter, he could not doubt, "but that what was tranſacted by Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, "from his arrival till his departure, was as well known "to me as to himſelf." I further alledged to him, on this ſubject, the reſolution of the month of February, 1721, which he himſelf ſent to Mr. de ISMAYLOFF; wherein it was ſaid, "That his Majeſty had given his "conſent to the reſidence of an agent at his court, "without any mention regarding the time, directly or "indirectly." But this lord, notwithſtanding he had nothing to anſwer to what I advanced, held himſelf ſtrictly to his firſt deciſion, that my ſtay had been agreed to only till the return of the preſent caravan. And this altercation did not ceaſe till I gave him for a final anſwer, "That the Czar, my maſter, not hav- "ing ordered me to enter this empire in ſpite of the "court, or to continue to reſide in it contrary to the "good pleaſure of the Bogdoi-Chan, I was obliged to "conform myſelf, on this occaſion, to all that his Ma- "jeſty ſhould think fit to determine in regard to me." After which he ſhowed me a ſmall letter, with an addreſs in the RUSS language, ſaying it came from NANITI

TURSOFF

TURSOFF, interpreter at SELINGINSKY, and that the Kutuchtu * had ſent it to PEKIN, that it might be delivered to me. He added, "That he knew very well, "that ſince the departure of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, I had "received a good number of letters, the contents of "which I had communicated to no body; but as to "this letter, I muſt determine to open it in his pre-"ſence, and let him take a copy of it, if I wiſhed to "have it; for if he could not prevail ſo far upon me, "I ſhould not read it neither, as he would take care "to return it whence it came." He gave orders, for this purpoſe, to two tranſlators, who were then preſent, to ſet themſelves by me, and to read the letter at the ſame time I did. As I had not yet opened the letter, I asked him, "What occaſioned a curioſity ſo "unallowable? and if he did not know, that this pro-"cedure was directly contrary to the rights of nati-"ons?" His anſwer was, "That he was well enough "appriſed, that what he did on this occaſion was a "little irregular; but this letter happening to fall into "his hands, he expected that I would not make much

MAY. 1722.

* The Kutuchtu is an high-prieſt belonging to the MONGALLS and the Northern KALMUCKS. He was formerly no more than a ſub-delegate of the Delay-Lama, in theſe parts; but he hath, by degrees, found means to withdraw from the obedience of his maſter, and to deify himſelf at the expence of the Delay-Lama.

MAY. 1722. "difficulty of communicating the contents to him; "and that I might determine on the alternative he "had propoſed." Thereupon I delivered him the letter, ſealed as it was, and deſired him to reflect ſeriouſly on the conſequence ſuch an unwarrantable curioſity might produce; and, in the mean time, I ſhould ſee to what lengths he would carry his authority over my letters. After which I left him, and retired to my quarters.

The 5th, two Mandarins came to me, on his part, to ſee "If I would not reſolve to comply with his will, "in regard to the ſaid letter." I charged them to tell him, on my part, "That I always found myſelf ready "to do him all imaginable ſervice, which he could in "honour expect; but what he deſired, on this occaſion, "was ſo unreaſonable, that I could not but conſider it "as an affront, which he had an intention wantonly to "give me; and that he might depend on being oblig-"ed, at a proper time, to give me ſatisfaction."

The 6th, the two tranſlators above-mentioned were commanded to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, by order of this miniſter, which made me think they had proceeded as far as to open my letter; but I was ſoon convinced of the contrary; for

The

The 7th, a Mandarin, accompanied by a clerk, came MAY.
to bring me the ſaid letter, which had not the leaſt 1722.
mark of having been opened. He, at the ſame time,
made me a compliment from the Allegamba, ſaying,
" That he deſired I would conceive no ill opinion of
" him, upon what had paſſed between us on the ſub-
" ject of this letter; in as much as he aſſured me, there
" was nothing ſerious on his ſide, in this adventure;
" and that he only took the liberty of having a little
" pleaſantry with me; not altogether without flatter-
" ing himſelf, that I might not be averſe to comply
" with his deſire, on this occaſion. But now, being
" convinced that I was firmly reſolved againſt this ſort
" of complaiſance, to any perſon whatſoever, he would
" no longer delay ſending me the letter in queſtion,
" and, at the ſame time, to aſſure me of his friend-
" ſhip." After having received the letter, I let him
know, in anſwer, " That I had myſelf, in the begin-
" ning, looked on this affair as a jeſt; but, finding he
" puſhed it too far, I had been obliged to regard it in
" another light; ſeeing I had never looked on the talk-
" ing in ſuch a manner to be jeſting. Nevertheleſs,
" that, after the poſitive aſſurances that the Allegam-
" ba gave me, that there was nothing ſerious on his
" part

MAY. 1722. "part of this affair, I ought to conſider it in the ſame "light; deſiring him, in time to come, to make uſe of "other perſons, not of me, for his diverſion."

After which, having opened the letter, I found indeed that it was from the ſaid TURSOFF, dated URGA, 20th of April, 1722. And as the Mandarin and clerk, who brought the letter, were ſtill in my chamber, when I began to read it, I made my interpreter tranſlate it to them by word of mouth, in the MONGALL language, to the end that they might communicate the contents to the Allegamba, and know of him if he would grant me a conference on the ſubject of this affair, or would rather receive from me a memorial thereupon.

The 8th, the ſame Mandarin came to my houſe, and upon my deſiring to know if he had acquitted himſelf of the commiſſion I gave him the day before, to the Allegamba, he anſwered in the affirmative, and that he was ordered to bring me his anſwer, which was, "That "the Bogdoi-Chan would hear nothing for the future "talked of any commerce of the RUSSES, in his empire, "until all the diſturbances on the frontiers were en- "tirely adjuſted; and as, for this reaſon, there might "continue a long ſpace of time before any caravan "might come again to PEKIN, the Bogdoi-Chan found

it

" it proper that the agent ſhould return with the pre- MAY.
" ſent caravan; and when the commerce between the 1722.
" two empires ſhould come to be renewed, he ſhould
" likewiſe be permitted to return to PEKIN." Where-
upon I made anſwer to the Allegamba, " That the or-
" ders I received from the Czar, were, as he himſelf well
" knew, to remain at PEKIN till he ſhould recal me;
" but as I was in no condition to oppoſe the orders of
" the Bogdoi-Chan, I was obliged to have patience,
" and to reſolve to do what I had no power to avoid
" doing; nevertheleſs, that this was no anſwer to what
" I deſired to know from him, and that I waited for
" it with impatience, as I did for a clear explanation
" upon this precipitate manner of breaking off all com-
" merce and correſpondence, between the two empires,
" without waiting for a reſolution upon the affairs of
" the frontiers, and without any declaration of war, or
" other previous mark of hoſtility on either ſide." But
the Mandarin declined to charge himſelf with ſuch a
meſſage, he not thinking it proper for him to repeat
ſuch terms as it was couched in to the Allegamba, ſay-
ing, I muſt either ſeek an opportunity to tell him my-
ſelf, or demand a conference, for that purpoſe, by my
interpreter.

The

MAY. 1722. The ſame day, in the afternoon, I ſent my interpreter to the council, to acquaint the Allegamba, by means of the Mandarins he might find there, that I had, the ſame day, received the orders of the Bogdoi-Chan for my return to RUSSIA; but I had received no anſwer on his part, upon the affair which was the ſubject I wanted to confer with him upon; for which reaſon, if he could not ſpare time to ſpeak with me himſelf, he would, at leaſt, let me know whether he would receive a memorial, on that ſubject, from me or not.

The 9th, another Mandarin came to me, and acquainted me, that the Allegamba had been informed of the ſubject, concerning which I had ſent my interpreter to the council the day before; and, as he had not a moment to ſpare, to confer perſonally with me, he had ſent this ſame Mandarin to me, to whom I might explain myſelf on what I had to ſay to him; as the Allegamba had given him orders to make him a faithful report of every thing which I ſhould charge him with. Upon which I told him, that I wiſhed he would inform the Allegamba that I prayed him to give me, under his hand, a preciſe anſwer to the points following, viz.

I. "If the Bogdoi-Chan was diſpoſed, before my departure,

" departure, to receive and to anſwer the credentials " which I was charged with from his Czariſh Majeſty? MAY. 1722.

II. " If any ſuitable ſatisfaction was to be expected " for the injuries done to his Czariſh Majeſty's ſubjects " by the Tuſh-du-Chan, or, at leaſt, by his orders?

III. " What was the reaſon that they would not " grant a free paſſage to the letters, addreſſed to the " council and to me, which remained on the frontiers?

IV. " In caſe the Bogdoi-Chan ſhould perſiſt in the " reſolution of ſending me home, what I ſhould ſay to " the Czar, my maſter, regarding the perpetual peace " between the two empires?

V. " Suppoſing that, contrary to expectation, my " departure might be deferred, I deſired to know, if, " in conformity to the treaties of peace, the Bogdoi-" Chan would grant me poſt-horſes for my journey, or " whether I muſt find them myſelf?"

The 10th, there came to me a Mandarin, from the Allegamba, to inform me, " That there was no likeli-" hood that the Bogdoi-Chan would alter his reſolu-" tion with regard to my departure; that no perſon " had the boldneſs to ſpeak again to his Majeſty, after " he had once explained himſelf ſo poſitively on this " affair. But that the Allegamba, in his turn, wiſhed

MAY. 1722. "to be informed why I demanded ſo preciſely to know "the motives of my being ſent away; and why I inſi- "ſted ſo ſtrenuouſly to have a clear explanation of the "intentions of the Bogdoi-Chan towards the Czar; "that he did not know whether I durſt make ſuch de- "mands, in caſe the Bogdoi-Chan ſhould be pleaſed "to ſpeak perſonally to me, without my being afraid "that he would make complaints of it to the Czar my "maſter." Upon which I returned him as follows, viz. "That it was abſolutely neceſſary for me to be fully in- "formed of what I deſired to know; that, without this "being cleared up, I could not well reſolve to depart, ſee- "ing it appeared evidently, that ſince the departure of "Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, the court had entirely changed "its diſpoſition regarding the preſervation of the good "underſtanding between the two empires; that the Al- "legamba himſelf could not be ignorant, how many of "his Czariſh Majeſty's ſubjects had, immediately after "the concluſion of the laſt treaty of peace, deſerted, and "come to ſettle on the lands in the dominions of the "Bogdoi-Chan, without the Czar's having ſhown any "reſentment to this time, notwithſtanding the ſame "was directly contrary to the ſenſe of the treaty; that "the Czar, on this occaſion, far from forbidding the

"ſubjects

"ſubjects of CHINA entrance into his dominions, had always permitted them, without interruption, to enjoy, in his dominions, an entire liberty, as well in regard to trade as all other affairs which could concern them, not even excepting ſome of thoſe very deſerters, who, having affairs to tranſact at ſome places in the Czar's dominions, had been no leſs welcome than the others, ſubjects of the Bogdoi-Chan; but now, that 700 of the ſubjects of CHINA had paſſed the frontiers, and would eſtabliſh themſelves on the lands belonging to RUSSIA, that would forthwith forbid all commerce, not receive any more letters, and in fine, at one ſtroke, break off all communication between the two empires; and that without even waiting the anſwer of the governor-general of SIBERIA to the letter wrote to him on the ſubject, which was the only certain means of knowing whether his Czariſh Majeſty intended to retain theſe people, or to make them return; that, to conclude, I prayed the Allegamba to conſider, if it was not much more eaſy to accommodate this affair by treating of it with more mildneſs, than to puſh it with an haughtineſs not to be born with *." MAY. 1722.

* It is certain that the judgment of the late Emperor, either from jealouſy, or the

MAY. 1722. Whereupon the Mandarin told me, he could not poſitively undertake for his daring to ſay all this to the Allegamba; but that, if a proper occaſion offered, he would not fail of doing it faithfully. He told me further, on the part of that miniſter, that the Mandarins, who had been ſent laſt year, by command of the Bogdoi-Chan, to paſs the frontiers of RUSSIA, were returned, they not being permitted to proceed on their journey, before the governor-general of SIBERIA was made acquainted with it; that the Allegamba might expect to wait long enough for an anſwer, as well upon this affair, as upon all other affairs which regarded the intereſt of the two empires, ſo long as they did not allow of a free paſſage to the letters wrote, concerning them, to the court. I received no more in anſwer then.

In the mean time, I had made a demand, ſome time ago, of the council, for a free paſſage for the caravan by the old road of KERLINDE, (which the former cara-

artifices of ſome ſecret enemies, was ſo altered, with regard to the RUSSIA-trade, a little before his death, that there was no other way of adjuſting it, but the having recourſe to arms; which was fully reſolved on, on the part of RUSSIA, when the news of the death of this monarch arrived there; which ſuſpended the execution of this deſign, till they ſhould ſee clearly into the deſigns of his ſucceſſor. But the death of PETER the Great entirely broke theſe meaſures; ſo that the affairs between RUSSIA and CHINA are ſtill, at this time, on the ſame terms they were on the departure of Mr. de LANGE from PEKIN; and, ſince the laſt caravan that left PEKIN with him, no caravan hath been ſent from SIBERIA to PEKIN.

vans

vans had been uſed to take,) to ſave them the inconveniencies attending the route by the deſerts, where the people and the cattle had much to endure for want of water; and, for this purpoſe, I ſent my interpreter, with a clerk of the caravan, on the 14th, to the council, to know if the Bogdoi-Chan had given his conſent, or not. But they told him for anſwer, "That "they expected to have been freed from their impor- "tuning the council about their beggarly commerce, "after they had been told ſo often, that the council "would not embarraſs themſelves any more about af- "fairs that were only beneficial to the RUSSES; and "that, of courſe, they had only to return by the way "they came." MAY. 1722.

The ſame day, I ſent to the houſe of the firſt miniſter, to know if I could have the honour of ſeeing him. But he excuſed himſelf; ſaying, that, being far advanced in years, he wanted to be at eaſe.

Nevertheleſs I did not refrain going myſelf, the next day, which was the 15th, to his houſe; and, the guard at the gate ſuffering me to paſs without interruption, I entered directly into the court-yard, and acquainted him with my being there, by one of his ſervants; deſiring he would afford me a quarter of an hour's audi-

MAY. audience. But he ſent me word, " That he was not at
1722. " leiſure to ſee me; and that, as the affairs, about
" which I would ſpeak to him, very probably only re-
" garded the council of foreign affairs, he deſired I
" would addreſs myſelf to them. I thereupon let him
know, by the ſame domeſtick, " That I was come to
" ſpeak with him, as the firſt miniſter of the Bogdoi-
" Chan; and if I had not had a very preſſing occaſion
" of applying to him, he might be ſure I would have
" been very averſe to have come to give him trouble;
" but, that it concerned us equally, both him and my-
" ſelf, that I ſhould have the honour of ſeeing him;
" therefore I was determined not to leave his houſe
" without ſpeaking with him." Upon this ſo preciſe a
declaration, the ſame domeſtick returned, a few mo-
ments after, and ſhowed me into a grand ſaloon, well
enough furniſhed after the CHINESE manner, where
the maſter of the houſhold of this miniſter came to
preſent me tea and milk, till his maſter ſhould come.
After I had waited about a quarter of an hour in this
apartment, the Allegada at length came, and deſired my
excuſe, with a number of compliments, after the CHI-
NESE manner, that he was not always able to ſee me
when I might require it; becauſe his great age, and mul-

tipli-

tiplicity of affairs with which he was charged, did not permit him. Whereupon, we being both ſeated, I told him, "That, if the affairs which I had to repreſent to "him, regarded only my own perſon, I ſhould not have "ventured to incommode him; but, as they regarded "our common maſters, and the preſervation of a good "underſtanding between the two empires; or, to ſay "all in two words, peace or war between the two na- "tions; I thought it my duty to ſeek, before my de- "parture, by every way poſſible, an opportunity of "explaining myſelf thereupon with him; that he knew "that the free paſſage of the caravans of SIBERIA "was made, in ſome degree, an eſſential point in all "the treaties between the two empires; that he knew, "moreover, that Mr. de ISMAYLOFF had declar- "ed, more than once, that his Czariſh Majeſty could "never allow that they ſhould any more cavil on "that article; that he further knew, that the free "trade of the ſubjects of RUSSIA, at URGA, was po- "ſitively ſtipulated by the late treaty, in which they "could not make the leaſt alteration, without a mani- "feſt violation of the ſaid treaty; that he knew in fine, "that it was with the agreement of the Bogdoi-Chan, "and by virtue of a reſolution of the council, in writ- "ing,

MAY. 1722.

MAY. 1722. "ing, that I remained at PEKIN, after the departure "of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, in quality of agent, impower- "ed by the court of RUSSIA, till ſuch time as his Cza- "riſh Majeſty ſhould be pleaſed to recal me. Not- "withſtanding which, not regarding ſuch ſolemn en- "gagements, they had, in regard to this laſt caravan, "treated us ſo ill, that, if they had been at open war "with RUSSIA, they could not have done worſe; that "they had kept ſhut up, during many months, the "commiſſary of the caravan, with all his people, juſt "as if they had been ſlaves; that there was no kind "of inſult to which they did not expoſe thoſe who "had a deſire to come and trade with our people. "And yet more, they had cauſed the RUSS ſubjects "to be ſhamefully driven out of URGA, who had "come to trade there on the faith of publick treaties. "And, as to what regards myſelf, they had made me "ſuffer more affronts, on all occaſions that offered, "than can be imagined; in the end, not yet ſatisfied "with all thoſe ſteps, the preſident of the council had "made it be declared to me poſitively, that there "ſhould not abſolutely, for the future, any caravan be "admitted, before the affair of the frontiers ſhould be "regulated to the ſatisfaction of the Bogdoi-Chan;

"and,

" and, at the ſame time, cauſed it to be ſignified to me, that I muſt prepare to depart with the caravan, becauſe his Majeſty would not ſuffer me to remain any longer at his court, in the uncertainty that affairs ſtood in between the two empires. That, if this order regarded me only as a private perſon, there would be nothing in it which did not depend entirely on the pleaſure of the Bogdoi Chan; but having been once admitted by him to reſide at his court, in quality of agent of his Czariſh Majeſty, it was a maxim, practiſed by all the civilized nations in the world, not to ſend away, in a manner ſo indecent, a perſon veſted with a publick character, unleſs entirely to break off all good underſtanding with his maſter. That if they deſired very ardently, as they aſſerted on all occaſions, the reſtitution of the deſerters in queſtion, and an amicable convention in regard to the frontiers, he would permit me to tell him, that, it appeared to me, they took quite the wrong way to obtain them; and that the ſending me away, ſo far from facilitating thoſe affairs, was moſt certainly the greateſt obſtacle they could think of. That I thought it my duty to remonſtrate the foregoing matters at this time, that they might ſtill be remedied; becauſe af- MAY. 1722.

MAY 1722.

" ter my departure, I did not well ſee how it would be " poſſible to get out of this embarraſſment by amicable means. The miniſter thereupon anſwered me, " That " it being already ſo long a time ſince the RUSSES had " given them the expectation of regulating the affairs of " the frontiers, conform to the treaties concluded be- " tween the two empires, without their taking the leaſt " thought of bringing things to a cloſe, his Majeſty had " come to a reſolution not to admit any caravan be- " fore he ſhould be fully ſatisfied, on the part of RUS- " SIA, of their adherence to treaties; and, as thereby " my reſidence at his court became quite unneceſſary, " his Majeſty ſaw nothing that ſhould oblige him to " keep me longer in his empire. That, in regard to " what paſſed at URGA, the Tuſh-du-Chan had good " reaſons for removing our people from his reſidence, " who had committed great inſolencies, no ways con- " form to treaties. That, as to what regarded the ill " uſage which I pretended the caravan had ſuffered, " he did not well know of what I ſpoke; but, as to " their being kept ſhut up a longer time than ordina- " ry, it was our own fault, who would have made in- " novations in the trade of the caravans. In fine, in one " word, that his Majeſty was tired of receiving the law,

in

" in his own country, from foreigners, of whom his " ſubjects reaped no profit; and, that, if the court of " RUSSIA delayed longer doing him juſtice, he ſhould " be obliged to do it himſelf, by ſuch ways as he ſhould " find moſt convenient." Upon which I replied, " That " I was much ſurpriſed to find the Bogdoi-Chan in a " diſpoſition ſo little favourable towards his Czariſh " Majeſty, after he had the goodneſs to teſtify himſelf, " on more than one occaſion, to Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, " that he deſired nothing more than always to live in " a good underſtanding with the Czar, my maſter; and " that I could not conceive what cauſed his change of " ſentiments ſo ſuddenly, with regard to his Czariſh " Majeſty. That if the court of CHINA had reſtituti- " ons to demand from us, we had the like to expect " from them; and that, in any ſhape, there was no rea- " ſon that could, in juſtice, oblige us to reſtore their " deſerters, ſo long as they retained ours. That if the " indulgence of the Czar, my maſter, in the affair of " ALBAZIN*, had raiſed raſh hopes in any perſons, who MAY. 1722.

* ALBAZIN was a little town of about 500 or 600 houſes, which the RUSSES had built in a very fertile country, upon the ſouth ſide of the river AMOOR, near the mouth of the river ALBAZIN. But at the end of the year 1715, the Eaſtern MONGALLS, ſupported by the CHINESE, beſieged it, and, having carried it after a ſiege of two years, raſed it to the ground.

MAY. 1722. "are ill informed of the forces of RUSSIA, and of the "monarch who reigns over them, I was perſwaded, that "a monarch ſo enlightened, as was the Bogdoi-Chan, "would not ſuffer himſelf to be blinded by ſuch delu- "ſive appearances; and that he knew full well how to "diſtinguiſh an indulgence, ariſing from magnanimity "and eſteem, for a prince his friend and ally, from a for- "ced compliance, grounded on weakneſs and indolence. "That as I had, in my inſtructions, orders to apply my "utmoſt endeavours for the preſervation of the good "underſtanding between the two empires, I thought I "might tell him, that I was exceedingly ſurpriſed at "the proceedings of the CHINESE miniſtry, on this oc- "caſion; that he could not be ignorant that it depend- "ed only on his Czariſh Majeſty to finiſh the war with "SWEDEN, in the moſt honourable manner; and that "perhaps this peace was actually made at the time I "was ſpeaking to him; after which, I ſaw nothing that "could prevent the Czar, my maſter, from turning his "arms to this ſide, in caſe they exerciſed his patience "too much. That I gave him my word, that all the "great difficulties, which perhaps might be imagined "in CHINA to attend ſuch an enterpriſe, would vaniſh "immediately, if ever his Czariſh Majeſty ſhould re-

ſolve

" ſolve on tranſporting himſelf to the frontiers; for he MAY.
" was a Prince that did not ſuffer himſelf to be hin- 1722.
" dered by difficulties; and that they might then have
" ſufficient cauſe to repent their having deſpiſed the
" friendſhip of a monarch who was not accuſtomed to
" receive offences with impunity, and who was inferior
" to no monarch in the world, neither in grandeur nor
" power." This diſcourſe was not at all to the Alegada's taſte; therefore, after ſome ſilence, he demanded of me, " If I was authoriſed to talk to him in the
" manner I did? and if I was not apprehenſive of being
" diſavowed by the court of RUSSIA, in caſe they ſhould
" make complaint upon the menaces I uſed to them?"
I thereupon replied to him, " That, in the ſtate to
" which I ſaw affairs were brought, I thought it neceſ-
" ſary not to diſguiſe any thing to him, to the end that
" the Bogdoi-Chan, faithfully informed by him, of all he
" had to conſider for and againſt this affair, might there-
" by be the better enabled to determine with himſelf,
" thereupon, in a manner ſuitable to his great wiſdom
" and juſtice. That nevertheleſs it was wrong to take
" what I had ſaid on this occaſion for menaces, ſeeing
" they were only mere reflections, which I was deſirous
" he ſhould make on the unhappy conſequences which

" the

MAY. 1722. "the diſdainful conduct they ſhowed, in regard to us, "might in time produce; and that I was ſo little ap- "prehenſive of being diſavowed by the court of RUS- "SIA, that I was ready to give him in writing every "word I had ſaid to him; and that it would be the "greateſt ſervice he could render me, to ſpeak out of "hand concerning it to the Bogdoi-Chan, the more as "I was well aſſured, that, if they would give the leaſt "attention to the irregular manner in which they had "acted in this affair, with a friendly and allied power, "they would not fail of comprehending that my in- "tentions were ſincere, and only had for its aim the pre- "ſervation of the harmony between the two empires." The anſwer of the miniſter to this was, "That it be- "ing his Majeſty's cuſtom never to take any reſolution, "without firſt well weighing all circumſtances, he ne- "ver changed his meaſures for any reaſon whatſoever; "and, after what he had declared poſitively, in regard "to the caravan and my perſon, he had no inclination "to propoſe to him a change of ſentiment in this re- "gard. That we had nothing to do but to make a "beginning in complying with our engagements; af- "ter which they would ſee what they had to do as to "the reſt." Upon which I concluded, by telling him,

"That

"That the caſe being ſo, I ſaw plainly, that it was in "vain, on our ſide, to uſe more endeavours for preſerv- "ing the good underſtanding between the two empires, "as long as they would contribute nothing towards it "on their ſide; that therefore the game muſt go on, "ſeeing the dice were thrown already. That however "I had, at leaſt, the ſatisfaction of having done my "duty in advertiſing him, as firſt miniſter of the Bog- "doi Chan, of the unhappy conſequences which would "enſue from all this; and that was the ſole reaſon "which made me think it abſolutely neceſſary, for me "to give him the trouble of this viſit." After which I roſe up and took leave of him. On parting he re-conducted me to the entrance of the ſaloon, where he ſtayed till I was mounted on horſeback. MAY. 1722.

The ſame day I was likewiſe to take leave of the Poyamba, or great marſhal of the court; and, after having returned him thanks, which were truly due to him, for all the goodneſs which he had ſhowed to me ever ſince the firſt moment I had the honour of being known to him. I profited myſelf of the preſent opportunity, to repreſent ſuccinctly to him the ſame things which I had repreſented to the Alegada. He thereupon aſſured me, "That he was ſorry to ſee that

"the

MAY. 1722. "the ſucceſs of my negotiations did not anſwer my "wiſhes. That it was true, that the Bogdoi Chan was "very much piqued that he ſaw there was no end "made to the affair of the deſerters; and that he had "certain advice, that our court had no deſire to ſatis- "fy him on this article; and that we only ſought to "protract time: that it was on theſe conſiderations "that he had been prevailed on, by the miniſtry, to "order my return. That, for his part, he was aſto- "niſhed to ſee that our court could heſitate a moment "to ſacrifice ſome hundreds of families, who were in "the utmoſt poverty, to the ſolid advantages which we "might promiſe ourſelves, from the friendſhip which "the Bogdoi-Chan had conceived for the perſon of the "Czar my maſter; and he made no manner of doubt, "but that, if the Czar had been well informed of the "juſtice of the pretenſions of the court of CHINA, and "the little importance of that affair, he would inſtantly "have given orders for reſtoring the families reclaim- "ed." I would have had him conſider the diſtance of the places, and that it was in a manner impoſſible that an anſwer could have arrived from ST. PETERSBURG, on this affair, ſince the departure of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF. But he ſtopped my mouth by telling me, "That he

"could

" could not ſay preciſely what the diſtance was, but he " knew very well, that, on other occaſions, our couri- " ers had made the journey in much leſs time. That " he adviſed me to do my beſt in this affair, when I " ſhould arrive on the frontiers; and that he could aſ- " ſure me, that when the Bogdoi-Chan was made eaſy " on this point, he would explain himſelf very reaſon- " ably on all the reſt of what we ſhould wiſh to have " done; that however, as to myſelf, I had cauſe to " be well ſatisfied with the ſentiments the court enter- " tained of me; and that his Majeſty had himſelf de- " clared, that, in caſe affairs ſhould come to be accom- " modated, he would not be ſorry to ſee me return to " PEKIN."

MAY. 1722.

The 16th, I went to pay my court to the Bogdoi-Chan, upon his departure from PEKIN to paſs the ſummer at JEGCHOLL, but had not the honour of ſpeaking to him at this time; his Majeſty letting me know, by the maſter of the ceremonies, " That he recom- " mended the ſame thing to me which he had charged " Mr. de ISMAYLOFF with, to tell his Czariſh Majeſty*.

* When Mr. de ISMAYLOFF had his audience of leave of the late Emperor of CHINA, this monarch declared expreſsly, that he would permit Mr. de LANGE to remain at PEKIN, in quality of agent of the court of RUSSIA, expecting that Mr. de ISMAYLOFF would, on his return, prevail with his Czariſh Majeſty to ſend back

MAY. 1722. "That, for the reſt, he wiſhed me a good journey; "and expected that I would not fail to write from the "frontiers, in caſe I ſhould there be informed of any "news from EUROPE."

A little before I received the meſſage from his Majeſty I had an interview with the Allegamba, who, after an infinite deal of careſſing and flattery, begged of me to labour, as much as poſſible, to forward the returning their deſerters; at the ſame time adding, "That "the Bogdoi-Chan had great reliance on me in regard "to this affair; in expectation, that, according to all "appearances, I would not be backward to return ſoon "to CHINA, either on the ſubject in queſtion, or on "the ſubject of commerce." I aſſured him thereupon, "That his Czariſh Majeſty, having ſubjects in abun"dance, had at no time the leaſt temptation to keep "the vaſſals of neighbouring powers unjuſtly." And I promiſed, at the ſame time, to write to him, if, at my arrival on the frontiers, I ſhould learn that any reſolution was taken on this affair. Afterwards I demanded

the deſerted families in queſtion; but, in caſe that ſhould not be effected inſtantly, he would not only ſend away the ſaid agent, but would receive no more caravans, till he ſhould be entirely ſatisfied on this article. But Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, on his arrival at MOSCO, found the court ſo buſily employed about the expedition to PERSIA, that he found no opportunity of getting a final reſolution on this affair.

of

of him, "For what reaſon they refuſed conveyance of "the letters which were on the frontiers." At the ſame time I led him to imagine ſome appearance that thoſe letters bore ſomething relating to their affair. Whereupon he anſwered me, "That, if it was poſſible "to believe it to be ſo, he would not make the leaſt "difficulty of inſtantly ordering the letters to be "brought hither; but that, if they contained orders "for the rendering back their deſerters, they would "not have failed to communicate the ſame to the "Mandarin, who kept himſelf at SELINGINSKY purely "on that affair." MAY. 1722.

At length, not ſeeing any appearance of being able to prolong my ſtay at PEKIN till the recal of his Czariſh Majeſty, I preſſed the commiſſary to neglect nothing that might facilitate his departure as ſoon as poſſible; and thereupon he diſpatched beforehand,

On the 25th, a part of his baggage for KRASNAGORA, which is a place, a day's journey without the Great Wall, appointed for the rendezvous of all the caravan. On this occaſion they did not give a guard of CHINESE ſoldiers to the caravan, as had been formerly practiſed; but they had ordered all the towns, where they ſhould ſtop, to give them guards;

JUNE. 1722. beſides which, there was a Bonska, or courier of the council of the affairs of the MONGALLS, ordered to attend the baggage, who was not to leave them without a new order.

JUNE.

The 6th, a Mandarin, named TULISHIN, let me know, that, having received orders from the Bogdoi-Chan to accompany me to SELINGINSKY, and to furniſh proviſions and poſt-horſes on the road, he would be glad to be informed when I thought I ſhould be ready to depart; that he might take his meaſures accordingly, and diſpatch in good time the couriers neceſſary for the deſerts, to make the requiſite diſpoſitions for my paſſage.

The 8th, the commiſſary went to the council, to demand a guard for the caravan; but they granted none; acquainting him, at the ſame time, that the Mandarin TULISHIN was alſo charged with the care of the caravan; and that, as he would be obliged frequently to leave the route of the caravan, for providing victuals and horſes which I ſhould have occaſion for on my journey, he was to have with him a clerk and two couriers, under his command, who were not to leave the caravan

caravan before they ſhould ſafely arrive at SELINGINSKY. JUNE. 1722.

The ſame day, 36 carriages were diſpatched, laden with merchandiſe, for the place of rendezvous, without any other eſcort than ſome of our own people, and a courier of the council.

The 16th, the Allegamba invited me to come to him at the palace of the Bogdoi-Chan; and, when I arrived, he preſented me with two pieces of damask, on the part of the Chan; telling me, "That his Ma-"jeſty having received preſents from me, on the en-"trance of the new year, he was pleaſed, in his turn, "to make me a preſent of theſe two pieces of da-"mask." I received this preſent with all due reſpect; aſſuring this miniſter, that I ſhould eternally cheriſh the remembrance of all the gracious favours which the Bogdoi-Chan had deigned to honour me with, during my reſidence in his empire; and that, in whatever place I ſhould be, in time to come, I would never fail of making it a ſubject of particular glory to me.

JULY.

The 4th, the Allegamba ſent a Mandarin to me, to ſhow me a letter, which he had very lately received from the Mandarin who reſided at SELINGINSKY, in which he made

JULY. 1722. made heavy complaints of the chicaneries that he was forced to bear with, during his reſidence in that place, as well from the officers of his Czariſh Majeſty as the other inhabitants of that city; adding, " That every " body demanded of him perpetually, the reaſon why " he tarried there ſo long, and if he did not intend " ſoon to return home. That thereupon having de- " manded of them, if they had come to any reſolution " on the affair which was the cauſe of his being there, " they had anſwered him, that they had no other or- " ders but to conduct him back, with all civility, when " he ſhould think proper to return." He related beſides in this letter, " That the allowance they gave " him, for the ſubſiſtence of himſelf and retinue, was " ſo very ſcanty, that, if he had not had of his own " money wherewithal to ſupply himſelf, he ſhould " have been reduced to great extremities. They " had, beſides, preſſed him very hard on the ſubject of " the letters, for the council and for me, that were ar- " rived on the frontiers; and they would, by force, " know of him the reaſon why he refuſed to receive " the letters, and to forward them to PEKIN; but that " he had always anſwered them, that, his ſole errand to " SELINGINSKY being on the affair of the deſerters, he

" could

" could not charge himſelf, either with letters, or any " other affair whatſoever." After the Mandarin had explained to me the contents of this letter, he told me, that the Allegamba demanded to know of me, " Whether it was poſſible that all this could be done " by order of his Czariſh Majeſty." I let him know, in anſwer, " That if he had formed ideas of the per- " ſon of the Czar, my maſter, by thoſe paſſages, he " would do well entirely to efface them; for that, as " his Czariſh Majeſty was more magnanimous than to " treat, in the manner there laid down, even priſoners " of war in his dominions, he would certainly not be- " gin ſo bad a practice with the ſubjects of an em- " pire in amity with him, who came into his coun- " try." I added, that notwithſtanding I had reaſon to complain of things of more conſequence than this Mandarin, I was nevertheleſs ſo far from approving the want of complaiſance uſed towards him, that, if the Allegamba thought fit to give me a copy of that letter, I was ready to take charge of it, and to make it my buſineſs that the Czar, my maſter, ſhould be acquainted with it. But with regard to the orders, which this Mandarin hinted he was charged with, not to receive any letters, though even for the council itſelf, before

JULY. 1722.

JULY. 1722. before he ſhould receive the deſerters in queſtion, I could not help obſerving that ſuch a procedure beſpoke much coolneſs on their ſide.

The 8th, the Allegamba ſent to me, in the evening, a Mandarin, who told me, after making me a compliment from him, that he would be, the next day, at the council; and that, if I had time to come there likewiſe, he would explain the reaſons which determined the court to reſolve on my return; and that he would give me the ſame in writing. Upon which I told him, I ſhould come there with great pleaſure, that I might be informed of them.

The 9th, having notice that the Allegamba was already arrived at the council, I forthwith mounted on horſeback to go there alſo. He came in perſon to receive me at the door, and deſired me to place myſelf at a little table with him. After which he gave me to underſtand, "That it were to be wiſhed that my reſidence "at that court might continue longer, as the Bogdoi-"Chan himſelf, and all the miniſtry in general, were ſo "well ſatisfied with the conduct I had obſerved dur-"ing my reſidence; that they had nothing to ſay a-"gainſt my perſon; that they had remarked, with "much ſatisfaction, that, by the good order I had kept,

"the

" the preſent caravan had begun and finiſhed its com- JULY.
" merce, without producing the leaſt diſpute between 1722.
" the merchants of the two nations*. It had alſo
" formerly been too uſual to ſee the ſervants and peo-
" ple of the caravan do numberleſs inſolencies in the
" ſtreets, and commit all ſorts of exceſſes; but that,
" for this time, they could not without ſurpriſe ob-
" ſerve that nothing of this ſort had appeared; but
" that every thing paſſed with all deſirable decency†".

After I had paid this compliment by another, I told him, " That it was with intention of maintaining the " like good order, that his Czariſh Majeſty ſent me to " CHINA; and that it would be owing to themſelves, if " things, for the future, ſhould not be carried on in

* The CHINESE uſually bought, from the caravan, goods on credit, for which, at the time when due, they could not pay; which occaſioned very frequent diſputes between the two nations; to remedy this, the court of PEKIN had been accuſtomed to put into the hands of the commiſſary, at his departure, all thoſe who could not pay what they were indebted to the caravan, in order that he might compel them to pay as they beſt could; in which caſes the commiſſaries had frequently committed great abuſes, and treated the poor CHINESE, whom they had in their cuſtody, in the moſt barbarous manner; which very much diſguſted the people of PEKIN, and rendered them very averſe to trading with the RUSSIAN caravans.

† The exceſſes committed, by thoſe of the caravan, had been but too frequent till this time; and the commiſſaries, in place of redreſſing thoſe diſorders, had been very often themſelves the authors of them, without giving themſelves the trouble of making the leaſt ſatisfaction for them to the CHINESE, notwithſtanding the great complaints to the RUSSIAN miniſters thereupon on many occaſions. In all appearance, what contributed principally to the good order obſerved by the RUSS-ſervants of this caravan, was their not getting brandy, at free coſt, as they did when the CHINESE furniſhed the ſubſiſtence for the caravan.

JULY. 1722. "the ſame order; and if any other petty incidents did "not come to an accommodation with the like eaſe." After which, I prayed him to let me know the true ſource of the diſorders which happened, at URGA, between the ſubjects of the Czar, my maſter, and the MONGALLS; and "wherefore they obliged the RUSSIA- "merchants to leave that place before they had finiſh- "ed their trade." He anſwered me thereupon, "That "it was done by orders of the Tuſh-du-Chan and his "council, as ſupreme judges in their country." Upon which I demanded of him, "Whether the Tuſh- "du-Chan was a ſovereign prince of the MONGALLS, "or a ſubject of the Emperor of CHINA?" He replied, "That, in truth, the Chan was a vaſſal of the Bogdoi- "Chan's; but that did not hinder his being maſter in "his own country*." I then prayed him to tell me, "Whether the Tuſh-du-Chan was obliged to conform "himſelf to the engagement ſtipulated by treaty, be- "tween the two empires, to the end, that I might

* Though the Chan of the Weſtern MONGALLS is tributary to the CHINESE, they have nevertheleſs a great regard for him at the court of CHINA; the more, as he is a very powerful prince, and, that in caſe of a revolt in CHINA, it is from him that the preſent imperial houſe is to expect the greateſt aſſiſtance; his ſubjects being beyond compariſon much better ſoldiers than the MONGALL CHINESE, inſomuch, that, if he ſhould be diſobliged, and ſhould join himſelf to the KALMUCKS, or to the RUSSES, nothing could prevent his entrance into CHINA when he pleaſed, and probably bring about another revolution.

"know

" know if we ought to addreſs the court at PEKIN, on JULY.
" the ſubject of ſatisfaction we had to demand on that 1722.
" affair? or were to take it of the Tuſh-du-Chan? as
" it was not to be expected that affair would be let
" paſs without an exact inquiry. That, for my part,
" I thought the beſt means of terminating that affair
" amicably, was, that they ſhould order the Mandarin,
" who was to accompany me on the journey, to go
" with me to URGA, in our way to SELINGINSKY; to
" the end, that, after having full information of this
" affair, I might be able to ſend a circumſtantial ac-
" count of it to our miniſtry." But he anſwered me thereupon in theſe terms, " With us no judge who
" hath given a juſt ſentence can be made reſponſible
" for his judgement, was he no more than a mere
" clerk. Your people who were at URGA have affront-
" ed the lamas, as well by words as deeds; and they
" have, moreover, attempted to carry off ſome MON-
" GALL families from thoſe quarters; it is for this reaſon
" that the Tuſh-du-Chan was in the right to remove
" them from his territories." I anſwered him thereupon, " That this judge ought, moſt certainly, to ren-
" der account of his judgment, becauſe he had judged
" people who were no manner of way under his juriſ-

JULY. 1722. " diction; but he would have acted with juſtice if, af-
" ter having ſent the culpable to SELINGINSKY, he had
" proſecuted for ſatisfaction at that place. Whereas,
" now that he hath puniſhed the innocent equally with
" the guilty, and hath infringed the treaty of peace in
" ſo eſſential an article, his judgment cannot be re-
" garded but as a manifeſt act of violence." The Al-
" legamba, finding me inſiſt ſo ſtrenuouſly for an inqui-
" ry into this affair, ſmiling, told me, " Mr. Agent
" you do well to make ſo much work about this affair,
" but I do not know how to explain myſelf more pre-
" ciſely upon it at preſent; all that I can ſay to you is,
" that all of it will be eaſily accommodated when we
" ſhall receive a ſatisfactory anſwer upon the affair of
" our deſerters." After which he preſented me a writ-
ing, which he ſaid had been drawn up by order of the
Bogdoi-Chan, to ſerve for my information regarding the
reaſons of my being ſent away. Upon which we again
entered into diſpute together; but as theſe gentlemen,
on theſe occaſions, hold themſelves ſtrictly tied down to a
ſingle word, whether eſſential to the affair they are upon
or not, it was impoſſible for me to draw from him any
other anſwer, than that they had not deſigned to grant
my remaining at PEKIN longer than the time of the
" preſent

preſent caravan; and, that when the affair of the frontiers ſhould be accommodated, they would not be wanting to give a definitive reſolution, as well upon this article, as upon the other propoſitions which Mr. de ISMAYLOFF had made to the court. He afterwards preſented to me a letter, ſaying it was wrote by order of the Bogdoi-Chan, to Prince CHERKASKY, governor general of SIBERIA*; but I having refuſed to receive the ſaid letter, it diſpleaſed him a little and made him ſay, "That it was hardly civil in me to refuſe a letter, "which the Emperor, his maſter, had ordered to be "written, and to be put into my hands." I anſwered thereupon, "That I would not chuſe to do what I did "on this occaſion, if the letters which the ſaid Prince "CHERKASKY, in quality of governor general of SIBE-"RIA, had wrote to the council, were not likewiſe writ-"ten by the order of the Czar, my maſter. That he "could give this letter to the Mandarin, who was to "accompany me to SELINGINSKY, with orders to re-"ceive the letters for the court which were lying there; "and, that being done, I ſhould not then make the leaſt "difficulty to receive the ſaid letter." He declared to

JULY. 1722.

*The Prince CHERKASKY, governor general of SIBERIA, was recalled by the court of RUSSIA, in the year 1722, upon his own ſollicitations; and they afterwards ſent thither a perſon in quality of vice governor, who remains there ſtill.

me

JULY. 1722. me afterwards, that it was the pleaſure of the Bogdoi-Chan that I ſhould take JEGCHOLL in my way, to have my audience of leave of his Majeſty. And again reſuming the article of the letter from the court for the Prince CHERKASKY, he told me, " That what I had " done on this occaſion was not altogether ſo right; " ſeeing it was not allowed to any perſon, when in CHI- " NA, to oppoſe themſelves to the will of the Empe- " ror." Upon which I anſwered him, " That I was per- " ſuaded his Majeſty would put a different conſtructi- " on on this affair, from what he did." But that I wiſhed, in my turn, to know from him, " Upon what he " grounded his ſuſpicions, when he refuſed us, the laſt " ſpring, the paſſage to the deſerts for ſome of our " people, whom we would have ſent with money to " provide ſubſiſtence for our horſes; and, that under " the pretext, that by ſuch expeditions ſecret correſ- " pondence might be carried on, which might produce " miſunderſtandings between the two empires." Thereupon he ſaid, " That in reality he had no ſuch ſuſpi- " cions; but that he would willingly prevent the diſor- " ders, which might have happened on the journey of " theſe people; ſeeing, that if they had been robbed, " or aſſaſſinated on the road, we would not have fail-

" ed

" ed to demand ſatisfaction from the court." There- JULY,
upon I put him in mind, " That he was now brought 1722.
" to explain himſelf; that it was not to hinder ſecret
" correſpondence that he refuſed us paſſage, and that
" he might very well have ſpared himſelf that uſeleſs
" precaution, as to what regarded us; which had cauſ-
" ed us an expence of ſome thouſands of laen, for not
" being able to put our horſes into ſtables, to which
" purpoſe the money we wanted to ſend to the deſerts
" was appropriated; and had occaſioned the death of a
" great many horſes; and even thoſe that ſurvived were
" in ſuch a miſerable condition that they were by no
" means capable of ſerving in the waggons; which o-
" bliged our commiſſary to tranſport the greateſt part
" of his baggage to SELINGINSKY by carriages hired at
" PEKIN, which could not be done but at a very conſi-
" derable charge." This anſwer made him a little thoughtful; but at length he replied to me, " That
" he did not ſay ſo, but, be it ſo or not, we muſt now
" part good friends; to which end he prayed me to
" have no ill-will towards him upon account of the li-
" berty he had taken to triſle and jeſt with me on the
" ſubject of the letter from TURSOFF; that he could
" aſſure me he had no ill intention on that occaſion;

" and

JULY. 1722. " and hoped that I would be ſatisfied with this explanation, and not think otherwiſe of that affair, in " time to come, than as a piece of innocent raillery." To which I anſwered him, " That, as to what regarded " myſelf in particular, he might depend that I ſhould " abſolutely think no more of it; but, for the reſt, I " could not do in it according to my own pleaſure." Whereupon he asked me, if, at my return to RUSSIA, I ſhould be obliged to give a relation, in writing, to our miniſtry, of every thing that paſſed, during my reſidence in CHINA, in regard to my negociations; and, having anſwered him yes, he ſaid to me, that, in this caſe, I would do well not to inſert a number of trifling things, which could anſwer no good end, but might embroil matters more; for that it was much better that a good underſtanding between the two empires ſhould continue, than that differences between them ſhould be widened. I replyed thereupon, that, not having been ſent to the court of PEKIN as an inſtrument for creating miſunderſtandings, I would make it my buſineſs, in my relation, not to touch upon any things but ſuch as it was neceſſary for our court to be informed of. After which we both roſe up, and having

ing mutually embraced, we took leave of each other, reciprocally wiſhing to meet again ſoon. JULY. 1722.

The 12th, the commiſſary having left PEKIN, with all the reſt of the caravan, I likewiſe departed for JEGCHOLL, where I arrived on the 15th; and having forthwith made known my arrival to the chamberlain of the Chan, he let me know he would inſtantly inform his Majeſty; and, till he ſhould receive his orders for appointing the day of my audience, the intendant of his Majeſty's kitchen would take care that my table ſhould be furniſhed with every thing I might have occaſion for.

The 17th, I had my audience of leave of the Bogdoi-Chan, with the ceremonies uſual at this court.

The 18th, I left JEGCHOLL, and met the caravan the 24th; which being ſtill within the Great Wall, I paſſed it, the 26th, with the caravan, which I left, on the 28th, near KRASNA-GORA in the deſerts. And, on the 26th of Auguſt, 1722, I arrived at SELINGINSKY, after having reſided near 17 months at the court of CHINA.

A

SUCCINCT RELATION

OF MY

JOURNEY

TO

DERBENT

IN

PERSIA,

WITH

THE ARMY OF RUSSIA

COMMANDED BY

HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY

PETER THE FISRT,

IN THE YEAR M.DCC.XXII.

A SUCCINCT RELATION OF MY JOURNEY TO DERBENT.

UPON my return with the embaſſy from PEKIN, as hath been formerly mentioned, I found his Imperial Majeſty, all the court, the general officers, and the nobility and gentry, from all the empire, aſſembled at MOSCO; and great preparations making, at that city, for the celebration of the feſtivals, appointed to be ſolemnized there, on account of the peace, concluded at ALAND in 1721, between RUSSIA and SWEDEN, after a war which had laſted more than twenty years.

Theſe feſtivals were accompanied with maſquerades, grand fire-works, balls, aſſemblies, &c. the detail of which, though it would ſwell this work to too large a bulk, yet I think it will not be unacceptable to the reader, briefly to relate one part of it, I mean the magnificent ſhows exhibited on this occaſion; which I am induced

1722. to by the conſideration, which at that time ſtruck me, of PETER the Great his having always in view, even in his amuſements, and times of diverſion, all poſſible means of influencing his people to a liking of whatever tended to promote the good of his empire.

The RUSSIANS, in general, had a ſtrong averſion to ſhipping and maritime affairs. In order to appriſe them of the great advantages ariſing from a marine force, in his triumphant entry into MOSCO, he repreſented to his people that the peace, the rejoicings for which were now celebrating, was obtained by means of his naval ſtrength.

The triumphant entry was made from a village, about ſeven miles from MOSCO, called SESWEDSKY.

The firſt of the cavalcade was a galley, finely carved and gilt, in which the rowers plied their oars as on the water. The galley was commanded by the high admiral of RUSSIA. Then came a frigate, of 16 ſmall braſs-guns, with three maſts, completely rigged, manned with twelve or fourteen youths, habited like DUTCH skippers, in black velvet, who trimmed the ſails, and performed all the manoeuvres as of a ſhip at ſea. Then came moſt richly decorated barges, wherein ſat the Empreſs and the ladies of the court. There were alſo pilot-boats, heaving

ing the lead, and above thirty other veſſels, pinnaces, wherries, &c. each filled with maſqueraders in the dreſſes of different nations. It was in the month of February, at which time all the ground was covered with ſnow, and all the rivers frozen. All theſe machines were placed on ſledges, and were drawn, by horſes, through all the principal ſtreets of MOSCO. The ſhip required above forty horſes to draw it. In order to its paſſing under the gates, the top-maſts were ſtruck; and, when paſſed, ſet up again; beſides which, the gate-way was dug as low as was neceſſary for admitting it to paſs. 1722.

Theſe feſtivals being ended, his Imperial Majeſty prepared to undertake an expedition into PERSIA, at the earneſt requeſt of SHACH HUSSEIN, the Sophy of PERSIA, in order to aſſiſt that prince againſt the AFFGHANS, his rebellious ſubjects, who, under the conduct, firſt, of MYRVAIS, afterwards, of MYR MAHMUT, had not only ſeized upon the city and ſtrong fortreſs CHANDAHAR; but alſo, had poſſeſſed themſelves of ſeveral provinces, on the frontiers, towards INDIA; making frequent incurſions towards the capital of ISPAHAN. As I had formerly been at the court of PERSIA, I was engaged by my friend Doctor BLUMENTROST, his Majeſty's chief

1722. chief phyſician, to accompany him in that expedition. Accordingly, about the beginning of May, 1722, all things neceſſary being in readineſs, the troops embarked at MOSCO, on board of half-gallies, built for that purpoſe, and fell down the river to KOLUMNA; near which town the MOSCO-river falls into the OKA, about ninety verſts from the city of MOSCO. KOLUMNA was the place of rendezvous, and where the troops waited till the arrival of his Imperial Majeſty and the Empreſs, his conſort, who accompanied him in this expedition.

May 13th, their Majeſties, and all thoſe of the court who were appointed to attend them in this expedition, ſet out from MOSCO by land, and arrived the next day at KOLUMNA.

The 15th, his Majeſty employed himſelf in reviewing the troops, in inſpecting the condition of the fleet, and in giving the neceſſary orders. The fleet conſiſted of about three hundred ſail of veſſels, of all ſorts, on board of which were about fifteen thouſand regular troops, including half the guards.

The 16th, in the evening, his Majeſty and the Empreſs, attended by a few ladies, went on board a magnificent galley, of forty oars, with all proper accommodations, built on purpoſe for the voyage.

The

The 17th, at break of day, the ſignal was given, by firing three great guns from his Majeſty's galley, for the fleet to get under ſail. The galley led the way, and all the reſt of the fleet followed in a line. His Majeſty's galley carried the ſtandard of RUSSIA, the other veſſels their enſigns diſplayed, with drums beating, and muſic playing; which altogether made an appearance, perhaps, not to be equalled in any other country. In about an hour's time we came into the river OKA, where the veſſels had more room to ſpread. 1722.

Having, in my former journey to PERSIA, mentioned the ſeveral places from hence to ASTRAGHAN, I need not repeat them here.

I have formerly noted, that, at this ſeaſon of the year, the rivers of theſe parts may, in ſome meaſure, be compared to the NILE; for, from the melting of the ſnow, they overflow all the flat grounds adjacent to a very great diſtance.

The 21ſt, ſome of our people going aſhore, to take leave of their friends, did not return on board till late in the evening; which cauſed our being at ſome diſtance behind the fleet; upon which we uſed our beſt efforts to regain our ſtation; but, in the night, our pilot falling aſleep, the bark drove out of the channel of

1722. the river into a wood. I, being in the cabbin, heard a great noiſe upon deck, not unuſual on ſuch occaſions; at laſt I perceived the veſſel to ſtrike againſt ſomething, when, coming upon deck, I was not a little ſurpriſed to ſee the people climbing up trees; for the bark was jambed in between two birch-trees of very large ſize. All our endeavours could neither move her backwards nor forwards, until we got people from a neighbouring village, by whoſe aſſiſtance we got her warped off with little damage; which being repaired, we proceeded again on our voyage.

The 25th, we came up with the fleet at the town NISHNA-NOVOGOROD; where their Majeſties and all the court were moſt ſumptuouſly entertained at the houſe of Baron STROGONOFF. We ſtaid here ſome days to take in proviſions and other neceſſaries.

The 30th, being his Majeſty's birth-day, the ſame was ſolemnized, in the uſual manner, by firing guns, &c.

The 31ſt, his Majeſty ſailed in his galley for CAZAN, eſcorted by ſome of the ſmall gallies, leaving the reſt of the fleet under the command of the lord high admiral APRAXIN.

June 5th, we left NISHNA-NOVOGOROD, and, in fine calm weather, proceeded down the VOLGA.

The

The 8th, we arrived at the city of CAZAN; the Em- 1722.
peror had left that place the preceding day.

The 9th, we again proceeded on our voyage.

The 20th, we arrived at the town of SARATOFF. Nothing very material occurred by the way, in which we were ſome times detained by ſtrong gales of ſouth-erly winds, and by calms, during which we were in-commoded by infinite numbers of muskito-flies.

At this place we came up with the Emperor, who had appointed an interview with the Ayuka-Chan, King of the KALMUCKS; the Chan, for that purpoſe, had his tents pitched on the eaſt banks of the VOLGA, not far from the river.

Next day, his Majeſty invited the Ayuka-Chan and his Queen to dinner on board the galley; which, for the accommodation of the royal gueſts in getting on board, was brought as near the ſhore as poſſible, and a gallery made from the ſhore to the galley for them to walk on.

The Ayuka-Chan came on horſeback, attended by two of the princes his ſons, and eſcorted by a troop of about fifty of his officers and great men, all exceeding-ly well mounted. About twenty yards from the ſhore the King alighted from his horſe, and was received by

1722. a privy-counſellor and an officer of the guards. When the Emperor ſaw him advancing, he went on ſhore, ſaluted him, and, taking him by the hand, conducted him on board the galley; where he introduced him to the Empreſs, who was ſeated on the quarter-deck, under a very rich awning.

Soon after the Ayuka-Chan was got on board the galley, the Queen arrived on the ſhore, in a covered wheel-machine, attended by one of the princeſſes her daughter, and two ladies, who were alſo eſcorted by a troop of horſemen. When ſhe was alighted, the Emperor went on ſhore to receive her, and, conducting her on board, introduced her to the Empreſs.

The Ayuka-Chan is an old man, about ſeventy years of age, yet is hearty and chearful. He is a prince of great wiſdom, and prudent conduct, is much reſpected by all his neighbours for his ſincerity and plain-dealing. And I recollect, that, when I was at PEKIN, the Emperor of CHINA made very honourable mention of him. By his long experience, he is very well acquainted with the ſtate of affairs in the eaſt.

The Queen was about fifty years old, of a decent and chearful deportment; the ladies, her attendants, were young; the princeſs, in particular, hath a fine complexion;

plexion; her hair, a jet-black, which was diſpoſed in treſſes round her ſhoulders; and ſhe was, in the eyes of the KALMUCKS, a complete beauty. They were all richly dreſſed in long robes of PERSIAN brocade, with little round caps, on the upper part of their heads, bordered with ſable-fur, according to the faſhion of the country. 1722.

The Emperor intimated to the Ayuka-Chan, that he would be deſirous of ten thouſand of his troops to accompany him into PERSIA. The King of the KALMUCKS replied, that ten thouſand were at the Emperor's ſervice, but that he thought one half of that number would be more than ſufficient to anſwer all his purpoſes; and immediately gave orders for five thouſand to march directly, and join the Emperor at TERKY.

Both the Emperor and Empreſs were highly pleaſed with their gueſts; and, in the evening, diſmiſſed them with ſuitable preſents. The Empreſs gave the Queen a gold repeating-watch, ſet with diamonds, which ſeemed very much to take her fancy, beſides ſome pieces of brocade, and other ſilks of value.

It is well worth remarking, that this treaty, between two mighty monarchs, was begun, carried on, and concluded, in leſs ſpace of time than is uſually employed, by

1722. by the plenipotentiaries of our weſtern EUROPEAN monarchs, in taking a dinner.

The 22d, we left SARATOFF, and ſailed down the river VOLGA, with a fair wind.

The 23d, in the evening, we came to the town of KAMOSHINKA, where we remained till the next morning.

The 28th, we came to the town of ZARITZINA; and the 30th, to another town called TZORNO-YARR.

July 4th, we arrived at the city of ASTRACHAN. Little remarkable occurred during the voyage. We were ſome times detained by contrary winds; and, for the moſt part of the way, were much incommoded by muskitoes, which plagued us much in the day-time, and interrupted our reſt during the night.

The 5th, the weather being exceſſive hot, the Emperor quitted his houſe in the city, and went to lodge in one of the adjacent vineyards.

The 6th, the dragoons, whom we found encamped on the weſt bank of the VOLGA, to the number of five thouſand, were ordered to march directly to TERKY; there to wait the Emperor's arrival.

The 8th, the lord high admiral APRAXIN arrived with the fleet and troops on board. The next day the troops

troops encamped on one of the iſlands in the neighbourhood. 1722.

During our ſtay at ASTRACHAN nothing of moment occurred.

The 16th, all the neceſſary preparations being completed, the troops re-imbarked, and lay on board that night.

The 17th, the Emperor, Empreſs, and all the court went on board; and, the wind being fair, ſailed down the river; drums beating, and muſic playing. The fleet was in ſeveral diviſions, under their reſpective chiefs; and, being joined by a number of large tranſports, and other veſſels, made a very grand appearance; ſuch as had never been ſeen before in this part of the world, nor frequently in any other.

The 18th, the wind being contrary, we made but ſlow progreſs. In the evening it fell calm; all the ſhoals being covered with high reeds, contributed to increaſe the innumerable quantity of muskitoes, with which we were intollerably peſtered.

The 19th, we got out of the river VOLGA into the CASPIAN ſea. The wind being contrary, the heavy tranſports were warped out as far as poſſible, to get out of the reach of thoſe troubleſome inſects. At night

1722. night we came to an anchor, in eight feet water, near a flat iſland called TULENY-LAPATA.

The 20th, we continued warping out the whole day. At night we came to an anchor, near the four ſandy hillocks called TZATEEREY-BUGGORY.

The 21ſt, at break of day, the admiral made ſignal for ſailing; the fleet got under ſail, and put out to ſea, with a fair wind.

The Emperor, accompanied with the half-gallies, on board which were the troops, ſteered to the weſt, cloſe under the ſhore. But I being on board one of the large ſhips, we kept the ſea, and ſteered a direct courſe for TERKY. It is to be obſerved, that the Emperor and the gallies took their courſe to avoid being liable to be ſurpriſed with a gale of wind at ſea, which might have been attended with bad conſequences.

The 22d, we came into ſalt water, four fathoms deep, out of ſight of land, and alſo of the gallies.

The 23d, we had calms, and eaſy breezes at N. W.

The 24th, in the evening, we came to an anchor in the road of TERKY.

The 25th, the Emperor and all the gallies arrived ſafe.

The 26th, the Emperor went aſhore; and, having viſited

viſited the town and fortifications, returned on board in the evening. 1722.

The town of TERKY is a frontier ſtrongly ſituated by nature, being encompaſſed by a deep marſhy ground, having only one entrance to it, on the land-ſide, which is well-defended by batteries. It takes its name from a ſmall rivulet, running by it, called TERK. It is governed by a commandant, and hath a garriſon of about one thouſand men, of regular troops and COSSACKS; and is, at all times, well-ſtored with ammunition and proviſions. This place is of ſingular uſe for keeping the TZERCASSIAN mountaineers in order, who are well known to be an unruly and reſtleſs people. I ſhall hereafter have occaſion to ſpeak more of this nation.

The ſame day, the Emperor ſent an officer to the Aldiggerey, commonly called Shaffkal, to notify his arrival in theſe parts. The Shaffkal is a prince of conſiderable authority among the mountaineers, and a friend to the RUSSIANS.

The 27th, the fleet weighed anchor, and ſailed, ſouth by eaſt, to the bay of AGRACHAN, ſo called from a river of that name. In the evening, we anchored in the bay, as near the ſhore as was judged convenient.

The 28th, the imperial ſtandard was ſet up on the

1722. ſhore; all the troops landed and encamped. The ſame day, a COSSACK arrived in the camp, with diſpatches from General VETERANIE, who commanded a body of dragoons, giving an account, that, in his march, he was attacked by a ſtrong party of mountaineers, near the town called ANDREA; that, after a ſmart diſpute, in which ſeveral of each ſide had been killed, and ſome wounded, he at laſt diſperſed them, and took poſſeſſion of the town. *Theſe people having previouſly ſent all their families and effects to ſome* diſtance into the mountains, it ſeems this raſh attempt of theſe mountaineers was premeditated, for the general demanded nothing but a free paſſage through the country, and engaged to leave them unmoleſted. The place itſelf is of no defence, though they had barricadoed the ſtreets and avenues leading to it. The poor people felt, to their coſt, the effects of attacking regular troops, of which they had never ſeen any before. However, this was a certain proof of the boldneſs of theſe people. Several of them were brought priſoners to the camp; they were ſtrong able-bodied men, fit for any ſervice.

The Emperor, before he left ASTRACHAN, had ſent manifeſtos to all the petty princes and chiefs of DAGGESTAN,

STAN, declaring, that he did not come to invade or make war againſt them; that he only deſired a free paſſage through their territories, and would pay ready money for what proviſions, or other neceſſaries, they might furniſh, and that to the full value; to which ſome of them agreed, others of them did not; ſuch is often the caſe with free independent ſtates, as are thoſe of the DAGGESTAN. 1722.

The 29th and 30th were ſpent in landing the proviſions, artillery, &c. after which the whole army and baggage were tranſported, on boats and rafts, to the eaſt bank of the river AGRACHAN. This proved a work of labour, there being no woods at hand to make a bridge, nor water enough, at the mouth of the river, to admit our half-gallies, which were deſigned for the bridge.

The army being tranſported over, and encamped on the other ſide of the river, the Emperor made a plan, and ordered a ſmall fortreſs to be raiſed; he named it AGRACHAN, from the river on which it was built. This place was intended to keep ſuch ſtores as we could not conveniently carry along with us; and as a place of retreat in caſe of unforeſeen accidents.

Auguſt 2d, the chief named Aldiggerey came to

1722. pay his reſpects to the Emperor, who gave him a gracious reception; as he did to ſeveral other chiefs, of leſs note, who came in a friendly manner. The Aldiggerey was accompanied by a ſmall troop of his principal officers; moſt of them were handſome young fellows, very well mounted. After this chief had ſtaid ſome hours, and ſettled matters relating to the march, he took his leave.

In the mean time, the ſoldiers were employed in raiſing the works of the fortreſs; and ten thouſand COSSACKS arrived from the river DON, all horſemen, under command of KRASNOTZOKIN and other chiefs; and alſo the five thouſand KALMUCKS, ſent by the Ayuka-Chan, according to agreement, as formerly mentioned. They were all well mounted, and had many ſpare horſes, which were of great uſe. They all encamped in the plain towards the mountains.

The troops being now all aſſembled, we only waited for the carriages which the Aldiggerey had engaged to furniſh for the artillery and baggage.

During this interval our great leader, the Emperor, was not idle; but daily on horſeback, reviewing the army, which was now increaſed to more than thirty thouſand combatants, including the COSSACKS and KALMUCKS; a number

number ſufficient to have conquered all PERSIA, had it been intended. Beſides the army which were then aſſembled, the Aldiggerey made a tender to the Emperor of a conſiderable body of his troops, which the Emperor declined the acceptance of. 1722.

At length about three hundred waggons arrived at the camp, drawn by two oxen each; but, their harneſſing not being ſuch as we were uſed to, we were not a little embarraſſed in ſetting them a-going.

About the middle of Auguſt the army was put in motion, and marched, in ſeveral columns, from AGRACHAN; leaving there a force ſufficient to complete the works, and garriſon the place. In the evening we encamped at a brook of brackiſh and muddy water. This day our road lay about equal diſtance between the ſea and the TZERCASSIAN mountains, commonly called DAGGESTAN.

Next morning, we decamped, marched along the valley towards the mountains, and, at night, came to another brook of bad water, where was a little wood of oaks, and plenty of graſs, among which I obſerved great quantities of a certain herb, called ROMAN-wormwood, which the hungry horſes devoured very greedily. Next day we found above five hundred of our horſes dead in

1722. in the wood and adjacent fields. In our preſent circumſtances, this was no ſmall diſaſter. The cauſe was aſcribed to their eating the wormwood, which, perhaps, might be the caſe. We avoided, for the future, as much as poſſible, the encamping where large quantities of this plant grew.

Yet the dead horſes, having been in good caſe, were not entirely loſt, as our KALMUCKS feaſted on them for ſeveral days. It is to be obſerved, that theſe people prefer horſe-fleſh to beef; and, in all their expeditions, their baggage is very compendious, carrying no other proviſions than ſuch a number of ſpare horſes as they think they may want. I was often diverted in ſeeing theſe hardy people, round a fire, broiling and eating their horſe-ſteaks, without either bread or ſalt.

The loſs of ſo many horſes detained us ſome hours later than uſual; but, as both the water and graſs were bad, we decamped, and, at night, came to a ſpacious plain oppoſite to the town of TARKU, where the Aldiggerey reſides. Here we found freſh water, and good paſturage.

This place is pleaſantly ſituated in a hollow between two high hills, riſing, like an amphitheatre, to within a ſmall diſtance of the top; having a full view of the

CASPIAN

CASPIAN ſea. The Prince's houſe is the uppermoſt, and overlooks the whole town; it conſiſts of ſeveral apartments, with a ſpacious hall, after the PERSIAN manner, having a terraſs and ſmall garden adjoining. 1722.

Next morning, the Aldiggerey came and waited on their Majeſties, and invited them to dinner; which was accepted of.

Towards noon, the Princeſs, ſpouſe to the Aldiggerey, came and paid her reſpects to the Empreſs, and gave her Majeſty a formal invitation. This lady came in the equipage of the country, that is, in a covered waggon, drawn by a yoke of oxen, with a few footmen to attend her, and eſcorted by a ſmall party of horſe. The lady, though ſomething advanced in years, had ſtill the remains of an handſome perſon. She had along with her, in the waggon, a young lady, her daughter, who was ſo pretty that ſhe would have been deemed a beauty in any part of EUROPE. When they entered the Empreſs' tent, her Majeſty ſtood up to receive them; they then took off their vails, and behaved with great decency. They were richly dreſſed after the PERSIAN faſhion. After they had drank a diſh of coffee, they took leave, and returned to the town.

Soon after their departure, the Emperor and Empreſs

1722. preſs went to the town to dine. The Emperor went on horſeback, the Empreſs in her coach, attended by ſome of the court-ladies, and eſcorted by a battalion of the guards. The ſtreet was ſo narrow, and, near the palace, ſo ſteep, that the coach and ſix horſes could not proceed quite to the palace; which, when her Majeſty perceived, ſhe alighted from the coach, and walked the reſt of the way on foot. The Emperor was much pleaſed with the romantic ſituation of the place. In the evening they returned to the camp.

Auguſt 22d, the army marched from SHAFFKAL. The day being exceeding hot, no water to be found on the road, together with a continued cloud of duſt, to that degree that we could ſcarcely know one another, made this day's march very diſagreeable and fatiguing to all, more eſpecially to the heavy-armed troops, and the cattle. Notwithſtanding theſe inconveniencies, the Emperor kept on horſeback the whole day, and took his ſhare of whatever happened. At night, we came to ſome wells of freſh water, where the army encamped; but there was hardly water enough for the people to drink, which obliged us to ſend the horſes and cattle to a brook at ſome diſtance, and a ſtrong party of

of cossacks to guard them, leaſt the enemy ſhould attempt to carry them off. 1722.

The next day, we halted at the wells. The Emperor having received intelligence, that a certain chieftain of the mountaineers, named ussmey, was aſſembling ſome troops in order to harraſs us in our march, which lay through ſome hollow grounds; accordingly, towards noon, we perceived a number of horſe and foot, on the tops of the neighbouring hills, about three english miles diſtance from the camp; after they had reconnoitred our diſpoſition for ſome time, about one half of them, compoſed of horſe and foot, came down into the plain, with intent to drive off ſome of our cattle, which brought on a skirmiſh between our irregular troops and the mountaineers, wherein ſeveral were wounded, and ſome were killed, on each ſide. Our people took many of their foot, and of ſuch as had been diſmounted, priſoners. During the action our infantry kept cloſe in the camp. The Emperor rode out to the field; he ordered the dragoons to march, and ſupport the irregulars; on their advancing, the enemy ſoon diſperſed themſelves, and fled to the hills, where a conſiderable number had remained firm on the heights. The carrying off ſome cattle is ſuppoſed

1722. to have been their principal aim, as it would not have been leſs than downright madneſs in them to have expected to gain any advantage by attacking ſuch an army of veteran troops, well provided, and well conducted.

In the mean time, our dragoons and irregulars were in purſuit of the enemy, on the other ſide of the firſt ridge of hills, and quite out of ſight. The Emperor, being apprehenſive of an ambuſh, and of a large body of mountaineers being lodged on the other ſide of the hills, about three o'clock afternoon, ordered the army to decamp, and march towards the mountains; which was performed in ſix columns. The Emperor had hourly intelligence of the proceedings of the dragoons and irregulars, who, at length entirely diſperſed the enemy, and had taken poſſeſſion of the town where the Prince USSMEY reſided. However, it being then too late to return to our former camp, the army encamped, that night, on a plain between the hills, on the banks of a ſmall rivulet, where we had but indifferent quarters, as there was no more time than to ſet up the Emperor's tent, and a few others.

The next day, the army decamped, and marched back to our former camp at the wells; leaving the dragoons

goons and irregulars to manage the reſt of the buſi- 1722.
neſs, who made the DAGGESTANS, particularly the USS-
MEY and his people, pay dear for their raſh attempt of endeavouring to interrupt the march of an army ſo far ſuperior to any force they could muſter. We ſtaid here two days, waiting for the return of our dragoons and irregulars.

The 27th, the troops being all re-aſſembled, the Emperor decamped, and marched again to the ſouth-eaſtward, towards DERBENT, through a dry parched plain. At night, we came to a brook, near the foot of the hills, where we encamped, not having ſeen any enemy that day.

The 28th, we marched again; and, paſſing a defile, or hollow way, with ſome difficulty and delay to the carriages, at night, we came to wells of brackiſh water, where we ſet up our tents, at no great diſtance from the hills, the ſea being about a mile from us to the left hand.

The 29th, being within a ſhort march of the city of DERBENT, the Emperor halted to give the troops time to put themſelves in order for an entry into the town, as it is the frontier belonging to the Shach of PERSIA.

1722. Near our camp there are ſeveral pits flowing with that bituminous liquid called naphtha. The naphtha here is of a blackiſh colour, very inflammable; it is uſed by the PERSIANS to burn in their lamps, and not eaſily extinguiſhed by rain; but, as I have formerly ſpoken of this kind of petroleum, I do not enlarge on that ſubject here.

The 30th, the army ſet forwards, the Emperor being on horſeback at the head of his troops, which made a fine appearance. At the diſtance of about three ENGLISH miles from DERBENT, the governor of that place, attended by his officers of diſtinction, and the magiſtrates of the town, came, in a body, to wait on the Emperor, and to preſent him with the golden keys of the town and of the citadel; which they did on a cuſhion covered with very rich PERSIAN brocade; the governor, and all his attendants, kneeling during this ſhort ceremony. The Emperor received theſe gentlemen very graciouſly, and gave them ſignal marks of his favour. They accompanied him to the city, where, being arrived, the army halted ſome time; during which, guards were placed at the gates, and a garriſon in the citadel, under the command of Colonel YUNGER,

GER, with a ſupply of cannon and ammunition, both which were much wanting in the place. 1722.

The foregoing being completed, the Emperor, at the head of his army, marched through the city, and encamped among the vineyards, about an ENGLISH mile to the ſouth-eaſtward of the town, and about half a mile from the ſea-ſhore.

Soon after which the Emperor, accompanied by all the general officers, returned again to the city, and examined the condition of the fortifications. On this occaſion the PERSIAN governor made his Majeſty an offer of his houſe, and quarters for as many of the troops as the place could accommodate; but, to avoid putting the inhabitants to any inconveniency, or perhaps for other reaſons, the Emperor declined accepting the offer of lodging in the city; and, at night, returned to his camp.

In this ſituation we continued ſome days; and were making the needful preparations for advancing farther into the country, as ſoon as the tranſports with proviſions, ſtores, &c. from ASTRACHAN, which were daily expected, ſhould arrive.

They did arrive in ſafety; but a moſt unfortunate accident happened; the night following, after their arrival,

1722. rival, a violent ſtorm of wind, from the north eaſt, drove the greateſt part of them aſhore, where they were wrecked and daſhed to pieces; but, by good providence, not many lives were loſt.

This misfortune diſconcerted his Majeſty's meaſures, and put a ſtop to the further progreſs of his arms for the preſent; having nothing before him but a country exhauſted of all neceſſaries; and the ſeaſon of the year being too far ſpent to wait a freſh ſupply from ASTRACHAN, the Emperor determined to leave things in the ſame ſtate they then were in, and to return again to ASTRACHAN, by the ſame way we came, leaving a garriſon at DERBENT ſufficient to ſecure the advantages he had gained.

Before I leave DERBENT I ſhall endeavour to give a ſhort deſcription of the place. It is ſaid to have been firſt built and fortified, according to the ſtyle of the fortifications of that age, by ALEXANDER the Great; though it is not eaſy to aſcertain that tradition, or the aera of its firſt conſtruction; yet, by variety of circumſtances, it appears to be very ancient.

The preſent citadel, walls, and gates ſeem to be of EUROPEAN architecture, and no mean performance.

The citadel ſtands on the higheſt ground of the city towards

towards the land-ſide. The walls of the city are built of large blocks of ſquare ſtone, they reach into the ſea, beyond which many huge rocks are tumbled into the ſea, to prevent any approach, or paſſage, on that ſide. The haven is now ſo choaked up with ſand, that there is hardly entry for a ſmall boat. 1722.

DERBENT may be called the key to the PERSIAN empire on this ſide; and ſerves to keep the mountaineers, and other neighbours, on that ſide, in awe. The ſituation is very pleaſant, riſing gradually from the ſea to the top of the hill, commanding a very extenſive proſpect, eſpecially towards the ſouth-eaſt. About thirty miles due ſouth ſtands one of the higheſt mountains in PERSIA, called SHACH-DAGH, which is always covered with ſnow. To the eaſtward of the town are many large vineyards, producing plenty of grapes, of which they make a conſiderable quantity of both white and red wine, of ſtrength ſufficient to preſerve it round the year, and longer if required. The people of ſubſtance there keep their wine in jars, buried under ground, by which method it will keep good for years.

They have alſo fruitful plains in the neighbourhood; and, at ſome diſtance, is a large foreſt of walnut-trees, oaks, &c. As this place is a frontier of great impor-

1722. importance, the Sophy of PERSIA always appoints a perſon of diſtinction for its governor.

His Majeſty having placed a ſufficient garriſon in DERBENT, which he left there under the command of Colonel YUNGER, upon September the 18th the whole army marched back through the town, keeping the ſame route by which we came. Little of moment occurred on our march, though we were almoſt daily alarmed by ſmall parties of the DAGGESTANS, who frequently made their appearance on the tops of the hills, but fled always at the approach of our COSSACKS. As we had ſeen no rain ſince our landing on this coaſt, our people ſuffered not a little from the great heats, continual clouds of duſt, and want of water.

On the 29th of September, after a moſt fatiguing march, their Majeſties and all the army arrived, in ſafety, at the fort of AGRACHAN, and found the fleet in the bay where we left them.

October the 1ſt, we began to ſhip off the baggage, and what artillery, &c. was not wanted at the fort of AGRACHAN; in which place the Emperor left a ſufficient garriſon.

I ſhall now endeavour to give the reader a ſhort view of the country commonly called TZERCASSIA, or DAG-

GESTAN

GESTAN by the inhabitants of the country, from *dagh*, which ſignifies a mountain in their language. The country ſo called is ſituated between the EUXINE, or BLACK ſea, and the CASPIAN ſea; theſe two ſeas confine it from N. W. to S. E. Southward it reaches to the province of GURGISTAN, commonly called GEORGIA. It ſtretches northward into a part of the STEPP, or deſert, which lies between ASOPH and ASTRACHAN. 1722.

The country is divided into ſeveral free independent principalities, as KABERDA, SHAFFKAL, USSMEY, and many others, under their reſpective chieftains, who are at firſt elected by the people; and though that office is ſometimes known to continue in the family of the perſon elected for ſeveral generations, yet it hath frequently happened, that, either through male-adminiſtration, or in conſequence of wars among thoſe different ſtates, a chieftain with his family have been depoſed, or baniſhed, and another appointed in his place. It hath alſo been known that the Sophy of PERSIA hath placed and diſplaced ſome of thoſe princes among the DAGGESTANS, who lye the moſt contiguous to PERSIA. Both the Sophy and the OTTOMAN PORTE lay claim to the ſovereignty of DAGGESTAN; but, of late years, theſe people, truſting to their own valour

1722. and the natural ſtrength of the country, pay little regard to either of theſe mighty monarchs, who ſometimes threaten them, at other times court their friendſhip.

The whole extent of the country is hilly, with ſome mountains of great heighth; yet, I am informed, they have fruitful vallies, producing corn, vines, and fruits, natural to the climate. Beſides a breed of excellent ſaddle-horſes, they have great ſtore of cattle, particularly of ſheep, which produce the fineſt wool I have ſeen in any part. Whether the famous golden fleece was the produce of theſe parts, or not, I ſhall leave to others to determine.

The men are, for the moſt part, well made, and ſtout; many of them are employed in the ſervice of the Sophy, and frequently raiſed to high ſtations. The Etmadowlett, or prime miniſter, ALY-BEGG, was a native of this country. As to their women, they are eſteemed to be the moſt beautiful of any in ASIA, as well for features and complexion, as alſo for fine ſhape; on which account many of theſe poor girls are purchaſed, at high rates, or ſtolen away, for the uſe of the ſeraglios at ISPAHAN, CONSTANTINOPLE, and other eaſtern courts.

The religion of the DAGGESTANS is generally MAHOMETAN;

METAN; ſome following the ſect of OSMAN, others that of HALY. Some of thoſe people are CHRISTIANS of the eaſtern or GREEK church. Their language, for the moſt part, is TURKISH, or rather a dialect of the ARABIC, though many of them ſpeak alſo the PERSIAN language. 1722.

One article I cannot omit concerning their laws of hoſpitality, which is, if their greateſt enemy comes under their roof for protection, the landlord, of what condition ſoever, is obliged to keep him ſafe, from all manner of harm or violence, during his abode with him, and even to conduct him ſafely, through his territories, to a place of ſecurity. With which I conclude what I have to ſay of the DAGGESTANS.

On the 5th of October, his Majeſty and the Empreſs went on board their galley, the fleet being ready, and all the troops embarked.

Before I quit AGRACHAN, I am deſirous of bringing the reader, in ſome meaſure, acquainted with the character of the magnanimous commander of this expedition, during which I had daily frequent opportunities of ſeeing that great man PETER the Firſt; and, during the whole time, was in company, and converſed, with thoſe people who had attended his perſon for

1722. very many years; ſeveral of whom poſſeſſed, in ſome degree, his favour, and were well-regarded by him. Therefore, I hope, what I am about to offer, concerning this great monarch, will not be unacceptable to the candid reader; whoſe taking in good part what I ſhall ſay, I have ſome right to expect; for I ſhall ſay nothing of fact, but what is true; nor any thing of opinion, but what is ſincere.

Several foreign writers have miſrepreſented and traduced the real character of PETER the Great, by relating mean ſtories, picked up at alehouſes, and circulated among the loweſt claſs of people, moſt of them without the leaſt ground of truth; whereby many people of good underſtanding have been miſled, and, even to this preſent time, look on him to have been a vicious man, and a cruel tyrant; than which nothing can be more the reverſe of his true character.

Though he might have had ſome failings, yet it is well known, to many living at the time of my writing this, which is above thirty-ſeven years after his demiſe, that his prudence, juſtice, and humanity very much over-balanced his failings; which principally, if not ſolely, aroſe from his inclination to the fair ſex.

I ſhall here take the liberty to inſert a paſſage or

two,

two, which, though trifling, yet as ſo great a perſon- 1722.
age is the ſubject, will not (I truſt) be altogether unacceptable or unentertaining to the reader, as they are inſtances of his aſſiduity.

About the middle of October, 1714, I arrived at CRONSTADT in an ENGLISH ſhip. The Czar, having notice of the ſhip's arrival, came on board, the next morning, from ST. PETERSBURG; being attended only by Dr. ARESKINE, who was his chief phyſician at that time, and, on that occaſion, ſerved him as interpreter. After his Majeſty had enquired news about the SWEDISH fleet, &c. he eat a piece of bread and cheeſe, and drank a glaſs of ale, then went on ſhore to viſit the works carrying on at CRONSTADT; and returned, the ſame evening, in his boat, to ST. PETERSBURG, diſtance about twenty ENGLISH miles.

The firſt winter after my arrival at ST. PETERSBURG, I lodged at Mr. NOY's, an ENGLISH ſhip-builder in the Czar's ſervice. One morning, before day-light, my ſervant came and told me that the Czar was at the door. I got up, and ſaw him walking up and down the yard, the weather being ſeverely cold and froſty, without any one to attend him. Mr. NOY ſoon came, and took him into the parlour, where his Majeſty gave him ſome

parti-

1722. particular directions about a ſhip then on the ſtocks; which having done, he left him.

His Majeſty's perſon was graceful, tall, and well-made; clean, and very plain in his apparel. He generally wore an ENGLISH drab-colour cloth-frock, never appearing in a dreſs-ſuit of cloaths, unleſs on great feſtivals, and remarkable holidays; on which occaſions he was ſome times dreſſed in laced cloaths, of which ſort he was not owner of above three or four ſuits. When he was dreſſed, he wore the order of ST. ANDREW; at other times, he had no badge, or mark, of any order, on his perſon. His equipage was ſimple, without attendants. In ſummer, a four-oared wherry was always attending, to carry him over the river, if he ſhould want to croſs it, which he frequently did. When he went about the town, by land, he always made uſe of an open two-wheeled chaſe, attended by two ſoldiers, or grooms, who rode before, and a page, who ſome times ſtood behind the chaſe, and often ſat in it with his Majeſty, and drove him. In winter, he made uſe of a ſledge, drawn by one horſe, with the ſame attendants. He found theſe to be the moſt expeditious ways of conveyance, and uſed no other. He was abroad every day in the year, unleſs confined at home by illneſs, which

which rarely happened; ſo that ſeldom a day paſſed 1722.
but he was ſeen in almoſt every part of the city.

I have more than once ſeen him ſtop, in the ſtreets, to receive petitions from perſons who thought themſelves wronged by ſentences paſſed in courts of judicature. On taking the petition, the perſon was told to come next day to the ſenate; where the affair was immediately examined, and determined, if the nature of it would admit its being done in ſo ſhort a time. It will naturally follow, that ſuch free acceſs to his perſon, was not only productive of great relief to many poor widows and orphans, but alſo a ſtrong check upon judges; and tended very much to prevent any ſort of influence prevailing on them to pronounce unjuſt ſentences, for which they were ſo likely to be called to account.

His Majeſty might truly be called a man of buſineſs; for he could diſpatch more affairs in a morning, than an houſeful of ſenators could do in a month. He roſe almoſt every morning in the winter-time, before four o'clock, was often in his cabinet by three o'clock, where two private ſecretaries, and certain clerks, paid conſtant attendance. He often went ſo early to the ſenate, as to occaſion the ſenators being raiſed out of

their

1722. their beds to attend him there. When aſſembled, after hearing cauſes between ſubject and ſubject, or public affairs, regarding the interior of the empire, read by the ſecretary, and the opinion of the ſenate recited thereupon, he would write upon the proceſs, or upon the affair, under deliberation, with his own hand, in a very laconic ſtyle, " Let it be according to the decree " of the ſenate;" and ſome times would add ſome particular alterations, ſuch as he thought fit to mention, and under-wrote PETER.

His Majeſty knew ſo little of relaxation of mind when awake, that he never allowed his time of reſt to be broke in upon, unleſs in caſe of fire. When any accident of that kind happened, in any part of the town, there was a ſtanding order to awake him on its firſt appearance; and his Majeſty was frequently the firſt at the fire, where he always remained, giving the neceſſary orders, till all further danger was over. This example of paternal regard of the Czar for his ſubjects was, of courſe, followed by all the great officers, and thoſe of the firſt quality; which was frequently the means of ſaving many thouſands of his ſubjects from utter ruin, whoſe houſes and goods, without ſuch ſingular

gular aſſiſtance, muſt have ſhared the fate of their ruined neighbours. 1722.

In acts of religion he appeared devout, but not ſuperſtitious. I have ſeen him at his publick devotions in church many times. I have been preſent, when his Majeſty, not liking the clerk's manner of reading the pſalms, hath taken the book from the clerk, and hath read them himſelf; which he did very diſtinctly, and with proper emphaſis. His Majeſty was allowed, by the beſt judges of the SCLAVONIAN and RUSSIAN languages, to be as great a maſter of them, as any the moſt learned of his ſubjects, whether churchmen or laics. He wrote a very good hand, very expeditiouſly, yet the characters diſtinct enough; of this I myſelf am ſome judge, having ſeen many of his letters, all wrote with his own hand, to Mr. HENRY STILES, and others. As to his ſtyle, ſome of his ſecretaries, and other competent judges of the language, affirmed, that they had never known any man who wrote more correctly, or could compriſe the ſenſe and meaning of what he wrote in ſo few words, as his Majeſty.

The following I had from a certain RUSS gentleman, of very good family, and who was a general officer of unexceptionable character in the army, who

1722. had attended his Majeſty, from his very youth, in all his expeditions. This officer being an old friend of mine, I went to pay him a viſit one evening, long after the death of PETER the great; when he told me, that ſuch and ſuch old officers, naming them, had dined with him that day, and that the principal ſubject of their converſation turned on the actions of their old father, (as he termed him, by way of eminence,) PETER the great. He told me further, that though his Majeſty ſeemed to be ſevere, on certain occaſions, yet not one of them all could produce or recollect one ſingle inſtance of his having puniſhed an honeſt man; or, that he had cauſed any perſon to ſuffer any puniſhment who had not well deſerved it.

He hath been repreſented as making too frequent uſe of ſpirituous liquors to exceſs, which is an unmerited aſperſion; for he had an averſion to all ſots, and to thoſe too much given to drink. It is true, he had his times of diverſion, when he would be merry himſelf, and liked to ſee others ſo; this may have been neceſſary, and proper for the unbending his mind from affairs of great weight; but ſuch amuſements occurred generally during holidays, and feſtival times, and was, with him, at no time of long continuance. It hath been

been imputed to him, and not without ſome appear- 1722.
ance of reaſon, that he had political views in encouraging drinking at theſe times of merriment; for, on theſe occaſions, he mixed with the company, and, converſing with them on the footing of a companion, had better opportunities, at ſuch times, of diſcovering the real ſentiments of thoſe about him, than when they were quite cool.

Thoſe, who by their offices about the perſon of PETER the great, might be ſuppoſed to be the beſt acquainted with his diſpoſition, always diſavowed his drinking to exceſs; and inſiſted on his being a ſober Prince. I can aver, that, during the campaign of the expedition to DERBENT in PERSIA, he was not once guilty of the leaſt exceſs; but rather lived abſtemiouſly. In this point I could not be miſtaken, as the tent of DR. BLUMENTROST, his Majeſty's chief phyſician, with whom I lodged, was always the neareſt tent to that of his Majeſty.

I ſhall give one inſtance in proof of what I have advanced, concerning the temperance of this great man, viz. In our third day's-march, on our return from DERBENT, we were kept in continual alarm by conſiderable bodies of mountaineers, both horſe and

1722. foot, whom we ſaw hovering on the tops of the adjacent hills; though they dared not to come down to the plain, to attack any part of our army, yet it was neceſſary to be watchful of them; which, in ſome meaſure, impeded our march. The evening of that day, we had a hollow way to paſs, which took up much time, and obliged the greateſt part of the army to remain there all night; ſo that none reached the camp, except the guards, and ſome light horſe who attended their Majeſties. On my arrival there, about midnight, I found only his Majeſty's tent ſet up, and another ſmall one for Mr. FELTON, the Czar's principal cook, and maſter of his kitchen. I went into FELTON's tent, and found him all alone, with a large ſauce-pan of warm grout before him, made of buck-wheat with butter; which, he told me, was the remains of their Majeſties ſupper, who eat of nothing elſe that evening; and who were juſt gone to bed.

During the whole march, his Majeſty, for the moſt part, rode an ENGLISH pad, about fourteen hands high; for which he had a particular liking, as it was very tractable and eaſy to mount. His picture is drawn by CARAVAC on this horſe. He did not wear boots, as he very often walked on foot. In the heat of the day, when

when the army halted, he uſed to go into the Em- 1722.
preſs' coach, and ſleep for half an hour. His dreſs, during the march, was a white night-cap, with a plain flapped hat over it, and a ſhort dimitty waiſtcoat. When at any time he received meſſengers, from the chieftains of the mountaineers, he put on his regimentals, as an officer of the guards, being lieutenant colonel of the PREOBRASHENSKY regiment.

During the whole courſe of his life, his Majeſty avoided all ſorts of ceremony, except on publick occaſions. His manner of living, in his houſe, was more like that of a private gentleman, than of ſo great a monarch. I was once at court on a holiday, when the Emperor came home from church to dinner, with a large attendance of his miniſters, general officers, and other great men. His table was laid with about fifteen covers. As ſoon as dinner was ſerved up, he and the Empreſs took their places; and his Majeſty, addreſſing himſelf to the company, ſaid, Gentlemen, pleaſe to take your places as far as the table will hold, the reſt will go home and dine with their wives.

On ſuch occaſions, the princeſſes, his children, dined in another room, to whom he ſent ſuch diſhes, from his own table, as he thought proper, for their dinner.

This

1722. This great monarch took all the pains, and uſed all the means poſſible, in order to be intimately acquainted with every thing proper for a man, who ruled a mighty empire, to know. He entered into the detail of every branch of the arts uſeful to mankind; into that of all the manufactures which regarded the conſtruction of ſhips, and fitting them for the ſea; into that of the making of arms, artillery, &c. If he had a ruling paſſion for any one part of theſe acquirements, it muſt have been for ſhip-building; into which he entered himſelf very early, in the quality of a common workman, with his hatchet, and proceeded regularly through all the degrees, to the rank of maſter-builder, which he attained but a few years before his death. After he got that length in the art, he made the draughts, formed the mouldings, and directed the building of ſeveral men of war, of the ſecond and third rates, himſelf; and he duely demanded, and received his ſalary as a maſter-builder. The day of launching the ſhips, which he himſelf built, he celebrated as a holiday, and put on laced clothes; but before he went to work, to ſtrike away the ſtanchions, blocks, &c. he always put off his fine coat.

He was very frugal in what regarded his perſonal expences,

expences, and thoſe of his houſhold. Notwithſtanding his frugality, in what related to himſelf, he ſpared no coſt, in whatever concerned the publick, in the ſtructure of his men of war, in the artillery, fortifications, arſenals, canals, &c. all which bore marks of very great magnificence. Nor was he ſparing in his buildings, and the decorations of his gardens with ſtatues, grottos, fountains, &c. of which the buildings of the ſummer-palace, and the gardens at ST. PETERSBURG, at PETERHOFF, STREALNA, CZARSKY SEALO, and many others, are ſufficient proofs. I ſhall not detain the reader longer, on the ſubject of this very great man's character, or way of living, than to acquaint him, that, as his Majeſty was very early up in the morning, he went abroad generally without breakfaſt; came home to dinner about eleven of the clock; after dinner, went to ſleep for about an hour; after which, if buſineſs did not intervene, he ſometimes diverted himſelf at his turning loom; then went to viſit thoſe he had a regard for, as well foreigners as RUSSIANS, with whom he would be very ſociable, and eaſy in converſation. He ſometimes ſupped with them; which, generally in his latter days, was on hare or wild fowl, roaſted very dry, drank ſmall beer, and ſometimes a few glaſſes of wine; 1722.

and

1722. and generally was in bed before ten of the clock at night. He neither played at cards, dice, or any game of chance.

The reader will pleaſe to take along with him the following obſervation, viz. That this monarch was at no time, even during maſquerades, feaſtings, aſſemblies, and all other diverſions or amuſements, by day or night, without the attendance of ſome or other of his miniſters, and of thoſe who poſſeſſed his confidence; by which means buſineſs, and ſuch affairs as were of the greateſt conſequence, went on regularly; and ſome of them even concerted during thoſe times of relaxation.

I now return to the 5th of October, 1722; at which time, the Emperor and Empreſs being embarked on board their galley, and the whole fleet being ready, and the wind fair, we weighed anchor, and got under ſail, from the bay of AGRACHAN, for ASTRACHAN, at which place we arrived on the 14th of the ſame month, little material happening in the paſſage, only ſome rough gales of contrary wind.

Having finiſhed what I had to do at ASTRACHAN, I joined company with SIMON GREGORITZ NARISHKIN, one of his Majeſty's General-adjutants, and Commodore

GOSSLAR,

GOSSLAR, who always commanded the ſhip in which his Majeſty hoiſted his flag, when he went to ſea; and with thoſe two gentlemen returned to MOSCO. 1722.

Accordingly, we ſet out from ASTRACHAN in a ſmall ſhallop, and came, by water, to the town of ZARITZINA. The winter approaching, we got ſuch carriages as the place afforded, and continued our journey, along the lines, to the river DON; theſe lines are drawn from the VOLGA to the DON, being a deep ditch, about thirty feet broad, palliſadoed on the top, with high wooden towers, at certain diſtances, in ſight of each other, well guarded. They effectually anſwer the end propoſed, by his Majeſty, in erecting them, and making the ditch; which was for the preventing of incurſions from the CUBAN TARTARS.

The 25th of November we arrived in MOSCO; at which place his Majeſty and the Empreſs arrived about the middle of December, 1722.

The following are the poſt-ſtages, and diſtances, between MOSCO and ASTRACHAN.

			Verſts.
From		Moſco	
to	the village of	Oſtroffsach	25
		Ulianinin Sealo	38
	Town of	Kolumna	32
	of	Zaraysky	39
		Prudach Sealo	37
		Pod Oſſinka	35
		Bogoyavlensko	35
		Gorlovy	25
	Town of	Skopina	30
	Town of	Reasky	40
	Village of	Blagoy	37
		Oloviach	35
	Town of	Kozloff	32
		Retzky Yaroſlafky	25
		Lyſſiach-Gorach Sealo	22
	Town of	Tamboff	22
		Kuſminoy Gatty Sealo	21
		To be carried over	530

		Verſts.
	Brought over	530
From	Retzky-Tziny	27
to	Panoffskich Kuſtack	24
	Retzky-Savally	20
	Retzky-Shinkoſſy	20
	Retzky-Tagaiky	26
	Retzky-Tavolſhanky	20
	Chaperskoy Krepoſt	22
	Michailofsky Gorodky	27
	Yuripinsky Stanu	17
	Tepinsky-Yurtu	20
	Pravotorskoy-Yurtu	20
	Kalinofsky Kuſtiky	24
	Zatofsky-Yurtu	21
	Kulmiſhkom-Yurtu	24
	Uſt-Chaperskoy Koluditz	21
	Roſsleeve	12
	Uſt-Medvedesky	13
	Kletzkoy-Tzaganock	18
	Klementsky Stantzy	23
	Novo Gregoriofsky	20
	Siropensky Stantzy	23
	To be carried over	972

		Verſts.
	Brought over	972
From	Retzky-Sokary	30
to	Gratſefsky Stantzy	12
Town of	Zaritina	28
	Reka-Actuba	26
	Tzareofa-Puda	31
	Urotziſha-Tzareva	30
	Tayunley	26
	Kulava	30
	Aſhlagatay	30
	Sakuley	30
	Okoreba	25
	Beſstzara	26
	Kravala	30
	Achſarava	27
	Reka-Bolſhoy Bereketa	20
	Aſtrachan	39
The diſtance from MOSCO to ASTRACHAN, the poſt-road, by land - - -		1412

AN

AN ACCOUNT OF MY JOURNEY FROM St. PETERSBURG TO CONSTANTINOPLE, AND THENCE BACK TO St. PETERSBURG,

IN PART OF THE YEARS M.DCC.XXXVII. AND M.DCC.XXXVIII.

UNDERTAKEN AT THE INSTANCES OF

COUNT OSTERMAN,

CHANCELLOR OF RUSSIA,

AND OF

Mr. RONDEAU,

MINISTER FROM GREAT BRITAIN AT THE COURT OF ST. PETERSBURG.

AN

ACCOUNT 1737.

OF MY

JOURNEY

TO

CONSTANTINOPLE.

A WAR having broken out, in 1734, between RUSSIA and TURKEY, which had been carried on with great ſucceſs on the part of RUSSIA, by their taking from the TURKS the ſtrongly fortified cities of ASOPH, OTZAKOFF, together with the PERECOP, and other places of the frontiers of great importance, the Emperor of GERMANY, through various connections, came, ſome time after its commencement, to be engaged in it.

In the autumn of 1737 a congreſs was appointed to be held at NEMIROFF, a town on the frontiers of POLAND, in order to accommodate and determine all differences, between the belligerent powers, by the mediation of the miniſters of GREAT BRITAIN, FRANCE, and the States of HOLLAND, then reſiding at the OTTOMAN

PORTE,

1737. PORTE, who were Sir EVERARD FAWKNER, the Marquis de VILLE-NEUVE, and Mr. KALKUNE. But, before theſe miniſters could reach NEMIROFF, the plenipotentiaries of the powers at war differed ſo widely, in their reſpective demands, that the congreſs broke up without effect.

The court of RUSSIA determining to ſend a perſon to CONSTANTINOPLE, with new propoſals of accommodation, and as no ſubjects of RUSSIA or GERMANY are admitted into the dominions of the Grand Seignor, whilſt he is at war with thoſe powers, I was prevailed upon to undertake the journey, at the earneſt deſires of Count OSTERMAN, the chancellor of RUSSIA, and of Mr. RONDEAU, at that time his BRITANNIC Majeſty's miniſter at the court of ST. PETERSBURG.

On the 6th of December, 1737, I ſet out from ST. PETERSBURG, with only one ſervant, who underſtood the TURKISH language. Having, in a former journey, taken notice of the places on the road between ST. PETERSBURG and MOSCO, I wave the repeating them.

The 9th, I arrived at the city of MOSCO; which had greatly ſuffered, the preceding ſummer, by a dreadful conflagration. As I purpoſe, at the end of my journey, to give an account of the ſtages and diſtances, I

ſhall

ſhall here only mention the time, and chief places through which I paſs. 1737.

The 11th, I left MOSCO, early in the morning, and proceeded to the ſouth-weſt towards KIOFF.

The 12th, in the night, I came to KALUGA, a large and populous town, ſituated on the banks of the river OCKA, inhabited by ſeveral ſubſtantial merchants, very conſiderable dealers in hemp, pot-aſh, wax, &c.

The 15th, I got to SIESKY, another town, which is reckoned to be at about equal diſtance from MOSCO, and from KIOFF, and is the laſt town in GREAT RUSSIA, bordering on the RUSSIAN UKRAIN. At night I reached GLUKOVA, the firſt town in the UKRAIN, a large and populous place; where having changed horſes, I proceeded thence the ſame night to another town called KOROLEVITZ.

The 16th, I paſſed through BATTURIN, a large rambling town, formerly the reſidence of the Hetman MAZEPPA; it ſtands on riſing hills upon the river SEMM. The country adjacent is very pleaſant, and exceeding fruitful, being moſtly plain, interſperſed with woods of oak, and other timber. The place is almoſt encompaſſed with cherry and other fruit trees. What is remarkable, and demonſtrative of the great fertility

1737. of the ſoil, is, that they have about ſixty water-mills, for grinding corn, all built within the diſtance of two ENGLISH miles.

At night, I got to NESHIN, another conſiderable town. At this place, for want of ſnow on the ground, I was obliged to leave my convenient ſledge, and ride all the reſt of the way on horſeback. This detained me much longer on the road than I ſhould have been, if I could have proceeded in my ſledge.

The 18th, I paſſed the BORYSTHENES in a boat; and, in the evening, arrived at KIOFF, ſituated on the weſt bank of the BORYSTHENES, now called DNIEPER. This famous river takes its riſe on the borders of POLAND, near the city of SMOLENSKO, and, after a long courſe pointing to the ſouth, diſcharges itſelf into the BLACK ſea, near OTZAKOFF.

The city of KIOFF ſtands on a high hill, and overlooks the river, and a ſpacious plain to the eaſtward, as far as your eye can reach. To the weſtward, the country is hilly; and many of the hills are covered with woods. There are ſeveral vine-yards about the town, which produce good grapes for the table.

This place is adorned with many magnificent churches; and is famous for being the repoſitory of ſaints, and holy

holy men of the GREEK church, whoſe ſhrines are viſited by devout perſons from diſtant places. Beſides, they have an univerſity at KIOFF, of conſiderable repute in theſe parts. 1737.

I cannot but obſerve here, that this part of the country, commonly called the UKRAIN, (though it is ſometimes called LITTLE RUSSIA,) doth, for fertility of ſoil and rich paſturage, exceed moſt parts of EUROPE; producing vaſt quantities of various ſorts of grain, the crops of which are always very great, as well as of hemp and flax, of the moſt excellent quality, and that with little labour; for they plow the ground with one horſe only, and with but one man, who holds the plow and drives the horſe at the ſame time.

The UKRAIN produces good horſes for the ſaddle, and large ſized black-cattle, in very great numbers, more than ſufficient for their own uſe, and for ſupplying their neighbours, with as good beef as the world affords. The woods are well ſtored with game of diverſe ſorts; as are the rivers and ponds with fiſh. Aſparagus, which in other parts requires cultivation, grows naturally, in ſuch plenty, in the UKRAIN, as to be termed a weed. The people are very civil and hoſpitable among themſelves, and alſo to all ſtrangers, living very

1737. clean and neat in their houſes. I now reſume my journey.

At KIOFF I met with my worthy friends General ROMANZOFF and the privy counſellor Mr. NEPTUOF, who gave me all the aſſiſtance and diſpatch I could deſire. They ordered a lieutenant, and a troop of coſſacks to eſcort me through POLAND, to the confines of MOLDAVIA.

On the 20th, I ſet out from KIOFF; and at night came to the frontier town, called VASSILKOFF, which ſtands on the declivity of a hill, and is the laſt town belonging to RUSSIA in that part. The place is but ſmall, though well fortified, and provided with a ſtrong garriſon, &c.

The 21ſt, early in the morning, I left VASSILKOFF, accompanied by my truſty coſſacks; and, after riding about an hour, I came to the borders of POLAND, where is an out-poſt, and a ſtrong guard of RUSSIAN ſoldiers. This place is called the ZASTAVE, very neceſſary in time of war. The territory of POLAND is divided here, from that of RUSSIA, by a deep ditch drawn a-croſs the middle of a ſpacious plain.

From the ZASTAVE I continued my journey, in a ſtrong froſt, which made the road very rough; and keeping

keeping to the ſouthward, along the ſame plain, I ſaw neither houſe nor tree, till I came to BELOZERKOFF, the firſt town appertaining to POLAND in this part. The gates being ſhut, before my arrival, it was ſometime before I could be admitted. However, at length, the gates were opened; I took up my quarters at a publick houſe belonging to a JEW. The ſame evening I waited on Mr. BECHERSKY, the governor, and deſired he would give me a paſſport. He treated me with great civility, and ordered the paſſport to be ready againſt the next morning. 1737.

The 22d, by the exceſs of the governor's hoſpitality, I was detained till the evening, waiting for his excellency's paſſport; which was abſolutely neceſſary, and proved of great uſe to me on the road.

The town of BELOZERKOFF, ſo called from a white church there, is a pretty large place, and is fortified. It ſtands in a pleaſant plain. The inhabitants are, for the moſt part, POLES, mixed with not a few JEWS, who keep publick houſes; and are generally farmers of the revenues all over POLAND. There is ſcarce a village without ſome JEWS, who keep inns, for lodging and entertaining paſſengers.

In the evening, I took my leave of the kind gover-

nor,

1737. nor, who, after treating me with great politeneſs, gave me a guide to the next village, called SHAMARYAFKA, about two POLISH miles diſtant from BELOZERKOFF, where I lodged that night.

The 23d, early in the morning, I left this village, in a ſtrong froſt, without any ſnow; and, after paſſing a few ſtraggling villages, at night, I came to GOLOQUAST; where I took up my lodgings at a JEW's houſe. It is to be obſerved, that the country is moſtly plain, with ſome riſing grounds, interſperſed with woods of oak, aſh, and elm, and other ſorts of timber, but chiefly of oak; is very pleaſant and fruitful, but thinly inhabited; which muſt proceed from their being expoſed to the incurſions of the TARTARS and HAYDAMACKS, who, at times, make cruel inroads into theſe parts.

The HAYDAMACKS were, the foregoing winter, at this place, with a body of five or ſix hundred horſe, where they committed many diſorders; after which, and after having tortured all the JEWS they could light upon, to oblige them to diſcover their money, they marched off with their booty, before the POLISH troops could be aſſembled to oppoſe them.

I was well informed, by people who knew ſomething of theſe lawleſs banditti, who are called HAYDAMACKS

by

by the POLES, and ZAPOUROSKY COSSACKS by the RUSSIANS, that they are a parcel of vagabonds, compoſed of idle fellows of different nations, who, having fled from juſtice, find a ſafe retreat among this crew. They are, for ſeveral reaſons, protected by the TURKS, who lay claim to the iſlands, and places adjacent, on the river DNIEPER, where they inhabit; and have fortified themſelves ſo ſtrongly as not eaſily to be attacked; nor can they be attacked without danger of breaking peace with the TURK. 1737.

They profeſs the CHRISTIAN religion; but have no wives nor any women among them; having erected themſelves into a wild kind of military order, if it may be ſo called. Every perſon, who is deſirous of entering into this community, is obliged to ſerve a certain number of years, before he is admitted into the brotherhood. The grand maſter is called Caſha-var, which ſignifies chief cook, who is choſen from among the fraternity, for his conduct and courage. I think I need not enlarge on the ſubject of ſuch a worthleſs ſociety.

The 24th, I left GOLOQUAST, and came, towards noon, to a ſmall town, called POGREBISHA, where I halted. The people, at firſt ſight, taking my COSSACKS for HAYDAMACKS, ſhut the gates, and alarmed the

place

1737. place. My paſſport ſoon convinced them of their error. After a ſhort ſtay, I proceeded again on my journey. At night I reached a ſmall village, named OTZEREDNO, where I lodged.

The 25th, leaving OTZEREDNO, I got to VITOFFTZY, another village, where I lay that night.

The 26th, I arrived at NEMIROFF, where the late congreſs was held, as I have mentioned above. This town is pretty large and populous, well fortified and garriſoned. The governor is General RUSSOTSKY, who hath Colonel WANGENHEIM, and ſeveral other GERMAN officers under him.

The country about NEMIROFF is very pleaſant and fruitful; having many orchards in the neighbourhood, which produce the largeſt apples and pears, that I have ſeen any where. They have alſo plenty of grapes, very good for the table.

The 27th, about noon, I ſet out again on my journey. I got that night to the village PETZORY, where I remained that night.

The 28th, I halted at SPIKOFF; travelled thence to LEFKOVITZ, a large village, where I paſſed the night.

The 29th, I halted at TAMAZ-POLY, and lodged at KLEIMBOFKA.

The

The 30th, I arrived at TZIKANOFKA, the laſt place belonging to POLAND on that frontier. It is a large ſtraggling village, ſituate on the eaſt bank of the river ISTER, now called DNIESTER, and is the boundary between POLAND and MORAVIA. On the oppoſite ſhore ſtands the town of SOROKA, the firſt in the principality of MOLDAVIA, now annexed to the TURKISH dominions. The ſame evening, I ſent my man to SOROKA, to acquaint the commandant or Perkulab, as they are called, of my arrival. 1738.

Next morning, the 1ſt of January, 1738, the commandant of SOROKA, whoſe name is PETROKY, a GREEK, came over upon the ice to viſit me, and told me that he was very ſorry he could not let me paſs without a ſpecial order from the Prince of MOLDAVIA, who reſides at YASSY, to whom he would immediately diſpatch an expreſs for that purpoſe; and hoped I would wait patiently for an anſwer. In the evening Mr. PETROKY paid me another viſit; he ſhowed me much civility, and brought me a preſent of wine, fruits, &c. which was very acceptable in a place where little was to be got for money.

January 2d, Mr. PETROKY acquainted me, that his expreſs was returned, with orders, from the Prince, to

1738. furniſh me with horſes, and a proper convoy, to YASSY. Having no more occaſion for the COSSACKS, I ſent them back again to KIOFF; but Mr. NOROFF, the lieutenant, was permitted to accompany me to YASSY. This gentleman is an officer of a marching regiment. The COSSACKS had their own officer beſides.

SOROKA is but a ſmall town, pleaſantly ſituated on the weſt bank of the river, about thirty leagues ſouth-eaſt from CHOTYN, and the ſame diſtance north-weſt from BENDER. The place is inhabited chiefly by MOLDAVIANS, mixed with a few GREEKS, JEWS, and TURKS. It is defended by an old tower, in which are ſome cannon of little uſe. The channel of the DNIESTER runs deep there, between two high green banks. The country adjacent is fruitful in grain, and abounds in very rich paſturage.

The 2d, early in the morning, I left TZIKANOFKA, and paſſed the river, on the ice, to SOROKA; where, the horſes being ready, I took leave of the commandant Mr. PETROKY, and proceeded on my journey. Towards noon I halted at a large village called KAYNAR. The preceding ſummer many of the inhabitants of this place were carried off by the plague; but it was now, by the rigour of the ſeaſon, much abated. As ſoon as

the

the horſes were changed, we left KAYNAR; and, after travelling over a very fine country, came, at night, to another large village, called MEYGURA, where we lay. 1738.

The 3d, I left MEYGURA. After paſſing the river PRUTH, I arrived, in the evening, at YASSY, where I found good and warm quarters.

Next morning, being the 4th, I was conducted to the palace, and waited on the Prince, who is alſo ſtyled Hoſpodar of MOLDAVIA. He takes the title of Serene Highneſs, though he is only promoted to that dignity by the Sultan, or rather by the Grand Viſier, and holds it only during pleaſure; being truſted with no other power than the adminiſtration of civil affairs; his name is GREGORY DUCAS; of a reputable GRECIAN family; he enjoys a general good character. This gentleman treated me with great civility and politeneſs, regreted that it was not in his power to allow of my going directly to CONSTANTINOPLE; and that I muſt go to BENDER firſt, where I ſhould find the Seraskier, who had the chief command in theſe parts. I was not willing to go ſo far out of my road; but, as there was no remedy, I complied. The Prince ordered a BOSNIAC captain, and two MOLDAVIAN ſoldiers of his guards, to eſcort

1738. me to BENDER; which was all he could do for me in the preſent juncture of affairs.

From SOROKA to YASSY the country is ſomewhat hilly, the ſoil rich, the paſturage excellent. About the river PRUTH are fine woods of various ſorts of timber natural to the climate. About YASSY, and in other parts, there are large vineyards, producing grapes in great abundance, whereof are made conſiderable quantities of wine, of inferior quality, the greateſt part of which is conſumed in POLAND, and other parts adjacent, for which the MOLDAVIANS receive conſiderable ſums in ready money.

The city of YASSY ſtands in a ſpacious plain, on the rivulet called BACHLUY, about thirty-five leagues, towards the north-weſt, from BENDER; it may contain between two and three thouſand houſes, moſtly built of wood. The inhabitants are CHRISTIANS of the GREEK church. The Prince's palace is an ancient pile of GOTHIC building, of ſtone and brick; it hath the appearance of a venerable old caſtle, for which, I ſuppoſe, it was intended, as this unhappy country hath been, at all times, expoſed to the ravages of barbarous nations.

The 5th, having taken leave of my companion, Mr.

Mr. NOROFF, who returned back to KIOFF, I ſet out from YASSY, accompanied by my BOSNIAC captain, the two MOLDAVIANS, and my own ſervant. We came, at night, to a village called VOLTZINITZ, about ten leagues ſouth-eaſt from YASSY, ſtanding in a fruitful valley, where we took up our quarters. 1738.

The 6th, we left this village in the morning; and came, at night, to KISHANOFF, another village, where we lodged.

The 7th, we left KISHANOFF. On the road we met with many troops of TARTARS, going to the eaſtward, on an expedition, notwithſtanding the weather was ſeverely cold, with ſtrong froſts. Theſe hardy people accompanied me all the reſt of the way to BENDER, where we arrived in the evening.

The country from YASSY to KISHANOFF is very fine; but towards BENDER, it grows more dry and barren, and doth not appear of ſo good ſoil, nor to have ſo good paſturage as the countries which I had paſſed through.

The MOLDAVIANS are all CHRISTIANS, and the Sultan indulges them with a governor, or prince, of their own religion. This privilege they have enjoyed for many years, which may be eſteemed no ſmall favour under ſuch

1738. ſuch an iron government as is that of the TURKS. Yet it may be obſerved, that their yoke is much eaſier, and their manners much more humanized, than at their firſt entrance and ſettlement in EUROPE; though I am perſuaded that two-thirds of MOLDAVIA lies waſte at this time. It ſeems to have been an eſtabliſhed ſyſtem in TURKISH politics to depopulate all the countries bordering on CHRISTENDOM, reſerving no more than may be ſufficient to furniſh their garriſons and troops with proviſions.

As the plague had raged all the preceding year in the town of BENDER, and had almoſt depopulated the place; about a mile ſhort of the town, we turned off the road, to the right hand, towards the TURKISH camp, where the Seraskier, or general in chief, lay in the field, with all his army about him. The general's quarters were ſtrongly fortified, with a deep ditch palliſadoed and mounted with cannon; but the troops were lodged in cells under ground, laid over with ſticks and earth, having a hole at the top to let out the ſmoke, fenced with a dry hedge about it. In this miſerable condition theſe poor people paſſed the winter. I and my BOSNIAC captain were conducted to one of theſe holes, which, at night, was crowded with TURKISH officers

ficers of diſtinction. Such miſeries, and many more, 1738.
are the frequent attendants on deſtructive war. The
Seraskier's name is GENGY ALY BASHA, or Young Aly
Baſha, though he is now about ſeventy years of age,
and hath the character of a brave and active general.

The 8th, the Seraskier ſent his ſecretary to me, who asked me ſeveral queſtions relating to my journey, and hoped that neceſſity would be admitted as an excuſe for the badneſs of my quarters. In the evening the ſecretary came again, when he told me, that in two or three days their feaſt of Bayram would be over, and then I ſhould proceed on my journey to CONSTANTINOPLE, with a proper convoy. In the mean time, he ordered an officer to furniſh me with ſuch neceſſaries as the place afforded. In this no agreeable ſituation I was obliged to wait till the feaſt was over, being five long nights, all the while confined within the precincts of my hut. One alleviation was, the company of my BOSNIAC captain, who tarried with me the whole time.

The 12th, in the morning, the ſecretary came and acquainted me, that the Seraskier had ordered a Chivadar, or officer, belonging to the Grand Viſier, and two TARTARS, to eſcort me to CONSTANTINOPLE; at

the

1738. the ſame time he told me that I might depart when I pleaſed. This welcome news was very agreeable, for I had been little better than a priſoner from the time of my arrival at the camp; though, I muſt own, they were very civil, and made me as eaſy as the accommodations, and the circumſtances of affairs, would admit of.

I could only ſee BENDER at a diſtance. But it is well known to be a place of importance, being ſtrongly and regularly fortified, with out-works in proportion. It ſtands in a plain, near the river DNIESTER, and is frequently mentioned, in the annals of late times, for being the place of refuge of that intrepid, inconſiderate monarch, CHARLES the Twelfth of SWEDEN, after the RUSSIANS had beat him out of the field at POLTOVA, in the year 1709.

Notwithſtanding the contagious diſtemper was not entirely ceaſed at BENDER, we had our daily proviſions from that place.

As ſoon as the horſes were ready, I mounted, and left this plaguy camp, which is ſo in a literal, as well as in an allegorical ſenſe. Although our horſes were in exceeding bad caſe, from the fatigues of the laſt campaign, and from the want of due accommodations,

of

of ſhelter, &c. during the ſevere weather that followed; 1738.
yet we made a ſhift to come, in the evening, to a large rambling town, called KAUSHAN, inhabited by BUDJACK TARTARS. It ſtands ſouth-weſt from BENDER. Here I had good quarters; the people were friendly and hoſpitable. At ſupper I ſat by an old TARTAR, who ſeemed to be a perſon of diſtinction among them. This old gentleman asked me many queſtions about EUROPE, through an interpreter, particularly about the illuſtrious family of LORRAIN, which ſurpriſed me not a little. The firſt diſh that came before us was pilaw made of barley; then he told me in FRENCH, that it was not dreſſed after the FRENCH faſhion. This brought on a converſation between us in that language, which he ſpoke well, in which he informed me, that, in his youth, being with the TURKISH army in HUNGARY, he was taken priſoner by the Duke of LORRAIN, who then commanded the imperial army. His highneſs took him into his ſervice, in which he lived many years; and, after treating him with great humanity, at laſt gave him his freedom, with liberty to return into his own country; which extraordinary favour he acknowledged with great reſpect and gratitude.

The 13th, having got freſh horſes, I left KAUSHAN,

1738. and travelled to the weſtward, towards the DANUBE, leaving the riſing grounds, and came along the plain, called the ſtepp of BUDJACK, which is flat, dry, barren, and uncultivated; yet there is ſome good paſture, eſpecially for ſheep, of which the TURKISH army have left few remaining. At night, we came to KONGLY, where are about a dozen ſtraggling cottages, inhabited by TARTARS. We made our quarters that night in the corner of a large ſhed, along with our horſes.

The 14th, as there was nothing tempting to detain us at KONGLY, we ſet forwards, very early in the morning; and proceeded along the ſame barren plain, without ſeeing houſe or tree all that day. In the evening, we came to a TARTAR village, called TARTAR-KEW, where we were tolerably well lodged and entertained.

The 15th, we left TARTAR-KEW; and came, in the evening, to the town of ISMAYL, ſtanding on the north bank of the famous river DANUBE, called DUNAY in theſe parts. The place is very pleaſant, within ſight of the BLACK ſea. The inhabitants are chiefly TURKS. Here I was well lodged, and had good bread and wine.

The river here is very broad, and divided into ſeveral branches, by iſlands, conſiderably large; though, when the river falls into the BLACK ſea, all the branch-

es

es are united, and form but one mouth at its en- 1738.
trance into that ſea. The north bank conſiſts of riſ-
ing grounds; the ſouth is fenced with high hills. I think the DANUBE, at this place, may be compared with the VOLGA at ASTRACHAN, both for breadth and quantity of water. By what I could obſerve, all the great rivers, from the VOLGA to this place, have, for the moſt part, high lands for their weſtern banks, and low flat lands to the eaſtward.

The 16th, we paſſed the north branch of the DANUBE in a boat, to the next iſland; but the other branches being faſt frozen over, we mounted, and rode and walked by turns, the reſt of the way, upon the ice; which was in many places very rough and uneven, with great ridges, conſiſting of pieces of ice driven together, and heaped upon one another, by ſtrong eaſterly winds, and the rapidity of the current. Some of the ridges of ice were at leaſt ſeven or eight feet high; which obliged us to walk on foot moſt part of the way. However, in the evening, we arrived ſafely at a town called TULTZIN, ſtanding on the ſouth bank of the river, four leagues from ISMAYL, where we had quarters, and other means of refreſhment.

TULTZIN is the firſt town in the ancient kingdom

1738. of THRACE, now reduced to a TURKISH province, known by the name of BULGARIA. The BULGARIANS, who are CHRISTIANS of the GREEK church, live, for the moſt part, in villages; the towns, in general, being inhabited by the TURKS. This place hath an old abandoned caſtle, ſeemingly of EUROPEAN conſtruction; and, as it ſtands among hills, on the banks of the river, the ſituation is very pleaſant.

The 17th, we left TULTZIN in the morning; towards noon we arrived at a large town, called BABBADAGH, ſtanding in a delightful valley, environed by hills. At ſome diſtance, from the top of the hills to the eaſtward, is a moſt extenſive proſpect; particularly a full view of the BLACK SEA.

It is ſuppoſed, that the poet OVID was baniſhed and confined to this place; which muſt have been no agreeable ſituation, to a man who had paſſed his young days in the court of AUGUSTUS, and had entered into all the pleaſures and amuſements of that court, during the time of its politeſt and gayeſt period, in the gallantries of which he was ſuppoſed to act no inconſiderable part. This amorous Poet's book DE TRISTIBUS exhibits a melancholy picture of the manner of paſſing

his

his latter days, at this place, ſo different in climate from the happy temperament of that of ITALY. 1738.

After changing horſes at this place, we ſet forwards. At night we came to a village called KAYBALY, at a ſmall diſtance from which we were ſo bewildered, in a drift of ſnow, that we loſt the road; and had it not been that the barking of a dog directed us, we muſt have lain in the fields all night.

The 18th, leaving KAYBALY in deep ſnow, we proceeded, and came to DANNA-KEW, another village, where we paſſed the night.

The 19th, we travelled through a very fine country, whereon we found very little ſnow; and came at night to KABADY, where we lodged.

The 20th, we proceeded, and came to a town called BAZAR-TZICK, and ſpent the night there. The town is inhabited by TURKS, GREEKS, and BULGARIANS.

The 21ſt, we came to PROVADY, a pretty large town, inhabited as the former. We ſtayed there all night.

The 22d, we left PROVADY; came that evening to TZENGY, where we lodged.

The 23d, we continued our route; halted at a caravanſera, four leagues from TZENGY, and after that at a town called AYDOSS; where having changed horſes, we proceed-

1738. proceeded on our journey, and ſlept that night at BENGLYR.

The 24th, we came to KANARA, and lay there. I cannot but take notice of this fine country, adorned with many beautiful woods and coppices, a very rich ſoil, and excellent paſture; but a great deal of it lies waſte; and it is but thinly peopled.

The 25th, we came to the town of KIRKGLISS; from thence to that of BURGLASS, where we remained that night.

The 26th, we went on. We lodged that night at TZORLEY.

The 27th, we reached the town of SILIVRY, which ſtands on the WHITE SEA, or the ſea between the DARDANELLS and the port.

The 28th, we paſſed through a large town, called BUYK-TZECKMIDGY; from thence the laſt ſtage to CONSTANTINOPLE.

I muſt here take notice, that at SILIVRY I was met by another Chevadar, who, inſtead of conducting me directly to the city, as I expected, turned ſhort to the left hand, out of the high road, carried me through by-paths, over ſteep and mooriſh-hills, uninhabited, till at laſt we came to a little village, on the top of the hill

hill called KARA-MACKLY, where is a neat country- 1738.
houſe belonging to MUSTAPHA-CASSA BASHA, the chief butcher to the Sultan, a place of great truſt and honour.

I was lodged in the Baſha's houſe, and met with a friendly reception from his Kaya, or ſteward, who furniſhed me with what neceſſaries I had occaſion for. In the mean time, I waited patiently for the return of a meſſenger whom they had diſpatched to the Baſha. This place ſtands very pleaſant and airy, within view of the city, and is a retreat for the Baſha, and his family, in times of the plague.

It will be readily imagined, that I did not much like being carried out of the common road. But, without asking queſtions, I followed my conductors.

The 29th, the meſſenger returned from the city, with orders that I ſhould proceed, which was very welcome news to me. Accordingly, we ſet out about ten of the clock. Towards noon, we arrived at CONSTANTINOPLE. They conducted me directly to the houſe of MUSTAPHA BASHA, who received me with great civility. And, after asking a few queſtions relating to my journey, he then deſired that I would wait till ſuch time as he ſhould acquaint the Viſier of my arrival.

MUSTA-

1738. MUSTAPHA BASHA did not return till the evening. Upon his return, he ſent an officer with me to SIR EVERARD FAWKENER, the BRITISH ambaſſador, to whom I was addreſſed, and in whoſe houſe I lodged during my abode at CONSTANTINOPLE.

I ſhall ſay nothing relating to the effects of my commiſſion, farther, than that I punctually conformed to the terms of my inſtructions.

Here it may be obſerved, that although the RUSSIANS under Count LACY, and under Count MUNICH, were very ſucceſsful every campaign, from the commencement of the war in 1734, and made great acquiſitions on the TURKISH frontier, on that ſide, by their taking ASOPH and OTZAKOFF; poſſeſſing themſelves of the PERECOP, and the CRIMEA; and carrying their arms, the laſt campaign, into MOLDAVIA, which was ended, by a conſiderable advantage gained by the RUSSIANS, at the battle of CHOTIM; in conſequence of which victory, the Baſha of CHOTIM brought the keys of that important fortreſs to the general of the RUSSIAN army, who ſent the Baſha, and the principal officers under him, priſoners to ST. PETERSBURG; yet the Emperor of GERMANY's arms, in HUNGARY, were by no means ſucceſsful; the TURKS gaining on the Emperor's frontier there,

there, as much as they loſt of their own frontiers to- 1738.
wards RUSSIA. Elated by their ſucceſſes in HUNGARY, during the laſt campaign, the OTTOMAN PORTE roſe in their demands, and inſiſted on higher terms than RUSSIA thought proper to agree to.

This famous city is ſo well known that I need not enter into a minute deſcription, ſo ſhall only give a tranſient view of ſuch remarkable things as occurred to me, during my ſhort ſtay at this place.

CONSTANTINOPLE is ſituated in forty one and one-half degrees north latitude, twenty-nine degrees eaſt longitude, upon a point of land, on the EUROPEAN ſhore, in the province of ROMANIA, and is eſteemed one of the moſt delightful ſituations in the world; for which reaſon CONSTANTINE the Great choſe it for the ſeat of empire, by whom it was rebuilt and beautified about the year of our Lord 330.

At a diſtance the city makes a very fine appearance, having a great number of gilded ſpires, and domes, or cupolas, which multiply as you approach; but, when you enter the city, the general irregularity and narrowneſs of the ſtreets do in no degree correſpond with the magnificent appearance it makes at a diſtance; which is, indeed, the caſe of many of the cities and great

1738. towns of EUROPE, ſeeming to be built at random. I have often thought, that, had a CHINESE been conſulted, he could have taught both GREEKS and ROMANS how to lay out towns, and that by the ſimpleſt rules; viz. Let there be ſpace enough, ſufficient breadth of ſtreet, and the houſes, on each ſide, built in a ſtraight line; which rules are obſerved in all the towns I have ſeen in CHINA, particularly PEKIN. This common error, in laying out towns in EUROPE, muſt be owing to the remiſſneſs of the government of nations; though this great inconvenience, in ſo grand a city as CONSTANTINOPLE, hath no relation to the ſituation of the place, yet it is thought by many, I think very juſtly, that, were the ſtreets of this city ſpacious and regular, it would, in ſome meaſure, prevent the frequent peſtilential diſeaſes with which this place is affected, and which prevail more here than in any other place I know; there ſeldom paſſing a year without its making dreadful havock among the populace.

This mortal diſtemper's being almoſt always, more or leſs, in this city, may, in part, be attributed to a defect in TUSKISH policy, which ſuffers all ſhips to enter the port, without requiring bills of health, at any time; even the ſhips from infected places are admitted. I

do

do not know but that the belief of predeſtination, prevailing ſo univerſally among the TURKS, with whom it is a fundamental article of their creed, may likewiſe contribute to the continuance of the devaſtations made, by this terrible diſeaſe, among the human ſpecies. 1738.

A very great nuiſance, attending this place, is, its being peſtered with a great number of naſty dogs which belong to no body; they kennel in every corner of the ſtreets; it is unlawful to kill them; and they are generally fed, which is looked upon, by many of the TURKS, as an act of charity.

It is, without diſpute, a populous city; but far ſhort of the numbers reported by common fame, which ſeldom keeps within bounds in things of this nature. It is true that many ſtrangers reſort hither daily, both from EUROPE and ASIA, and many of them remain here; but then, it muſt be conſidered, how many are carried off annually by the peſtilence and other diſeaſes. I do not think the whole number exceeds four hundred thouſand ſouls. In walking the ſtreets, you often meet with people, who, to avoid converſing with you, walk on the other ſide of the ſtreet, for fear of catching the diſtemper; and moſt people endeavour to get to windward of each other; which, with many o-

1738. ther inconveniencies, renders the place not very agreeable to ſtrangers.

From PERA, a diſtrict of CONSTANTINOPLE inhabited by EUROPEANS, and by the foreign miniſters reſiding at the PORTE, there is a fine proſpect of the city, and of the Grand Seignor's ſeraglio; which laſt ſtands on an eminence, with ſloping gardens, down to the edge of the canal, planted with rows of cypreſs, and other ever-greens. It hath the appearance of a moſt delightful place; but, though the walks are well ſhaded, it is not thought good manners, or even ſafe, to look at them with a ſpy-glaſs.

Oppoſite to the ſeraglio, on the ASIAN ſhore, ſtands the ancient city of CHRYSOPOLIS, or the Golden City, now called SKUTARY, a pretty little place.

Along the ſhore of the PROPONTIS, towards the ſouth weſt, runs a ridge of very high mountains, called OLYMPUS, which are covered with ſnow ſummer and winter. The mountain of that name, mentioned by the poets, ſtands in GREECE.

February the 3d, there was a great fall of ſnow, followed by a ſtrong froſt, which continued for the ſpace of fourteen days. I thought myſelf happy in eſcaping

it;

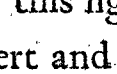
it; but this weather is very acceptable to the people here, as it tends to ſtop the contagious diſtemper. 1738.

I ſhall now take a view of ſome of the moſt remarkable ſtructures, in and about this ancient city, which are commonly ſhown to travellers. Indeed there are but few remains of antiquity to be ſeen at preſent; for the TURKS, according to their principles, deface and ruin every thing that hath an air of idolatry, as they call it, whether PAGAN or CHRISTIAN. What CHRISTIAN churches they have ſpared are converted into moſques.

March 2d, the weather being fine, I made a party with ſome friends to ride out and ſee the aqueducts, which are curious fabrics erected in order to ſupply the city with freſh water. They are ſaid to be built by the Emperor VALENS. They are now kept in repair by the Grand Seignor. They ſtand at unequal diſtances, from four to ſeven, or more, miles to the northward of the city, according to the reſpective ſupplies of water from ſprings and brooks.

The long aqueduct is about ſeven hundred yards in length, and near thirty in heighth; it conſiſts of two ſtories or ranges of arches, one above the other, having about fifty arches in a range, all of hewn ſtone, neatly wrought.

The

1738. The crooked aqueduct, ſo called from its form of zig-zag, runs in this figure  ; the intent of which is to divert and leſſen the force of the current; and hath a triple range of beautiful arches.

At ſome diſtance from this ſtands the high aqueduct, the moſt magnificent of all, being near three hundred yards in length, about forty in heighth, having four ſtately arches, with the ſame number over them. Beſides, there are ſeveral others of leſſer note, which I need not mention. They are all built to convey the water, over low vallies and hollows, to the city.

At night we came to BELGRADE, a pleaſant village, inhabited by GREEKS, where moſt of the foreign miniſters have their country-houſes, to which they retire in time of the plague.

The next day we remained at this village, and walked through the woods, to a neighbouring hill, to the eaſtward, from whence there is a full view of the BLACK ſea. Theſe woods are of fine oak, beech, and other timber fit for the conſtruction of a royal navy. They are well furniſhed with wild fowl, and various ſorts of other game.

The 4th, we left BELGRADE, when, riding to the ſouthward, through pleaſant woods and fields, we came,

about

about noon, to a large village, called BUYUCK-TEREY, 1738.
ſtanding on the north ſhore of the canal, or THRACIAN BOSPHORUS. This canal is natural, burſting out from the BLACK ſea, between two high mountains, and runs, in a ſtrong current, about ſixteen ENGLISH miles, to the city, where it diſcharges itſelf into the PROPONTIS. The depth is from ten to fifteen fathoms; the breadth from about one mile to half a mile; very well ſtored with moſt ſorts of ſea-fiſh, particularly oyſters of a ſmall kind, but very delicious. The land, on both ſides, is very high, with many pleaſant villages along the ſhore. At the mouth of the canal, where it begins from the BLACK ſea, the TURKS have built two forts to defend the paſſage, one on the ſhore of ASIA, the other on that of EUROPE; they may well ſerve to prevent ſudden incurſions, but of little uſe againſt a ſtrong ſquadron of men of war, and an eaſterly wind.

I was informed, that, in the reign of Sultan AMURATH, a ſtrong party of COSSACKS came, in open boats, before theſe caſtles were built, or when they were neglected, entered the canal, and put all the city in great conſternation. After they had plundered many villages they returned again to their own country, with little or no loſs.

From

1738. From BUYUCK-TEREY we ſent our horſes home, and returned to the city by water.

Some days after this I went to ſee the Sultan, as he came from his devotions at the moſque called JENEY-JAMEY. He was on horſeback, attended by a ſmall troop of ſpahis on horſeback, and ſome janizaries on foot. MAHMUTH hath a good aſpect, and bears the character of being of a humane, peaceable diſpoſition. This Prince ſucceeded ACHMET, who was depoſed, about ſeven years before, by one named ALI-PATRONE, a janizary, and his aſſociates, all people of low degree; the next in command to ALI-PATRONE, or KALYLL as he is commonly called, was MUSS-LUCH, a dealer in melons and other fruits; the third was EMY-ALY. Theſe three chiefs governed the TURKISH empire near a month. After they had placed MAHMUTH on the throne, they depoſed the Grand Viſier, and diſpoſed of all offices, civil and military, at pleaſure. ALI-PATRONE, in the mean time, was very ſober, never changing his habit, came every morning to the janizaries hall, where he ſat as ſovereign judge, and gave ſentence on all cauſes, that were brought before him, without delay; was very charitable to the poor, and rectified many abuſes in the ſtate. That magnificent Viſier, IBRAHIM-

BASHA,

BASHA, who had introduced printing, fell a ſacrifice to the rebels. 1738.

One action of KALYLL's I cannot omit relating, as it evinces, that his high ſtation did not produce forgetfulneſs of his old friends. There was one JANAKY a GREEK, a butcher by trade, who had formerly lent ALIPATRONE half a dollar. He ſent for this butcher, and made him Hoſpodar or prince of MOLDAVIA. Poor JANAKY would willingly have been excuſed from accepting ſo high an office. But his patron inſiſted on his taking it.

However, theſe mighty chiefs being intoxicated with power, began to intoxicate themſelves with wine alſo; and they were at length caught in a ſnare, laid for them by SULTAN GERAY, Chan of the CRIM TARTARS, who had been ſent for, by ſome of the grandees, for that end. SULTAN GERAY ſucceeded ſo well, that the chiefs were cut off, the reſt diſperſed, and the government re-eſtabliſhed on the ſame footing as heretofore, with very little bloodſhed; the particulars of which being, in general, well known, I ſay no more of that affair.

The next place I was carried to was the mint, where

1738. I ſaw them coining money of different ſorts. It ſtands in the outer-court of the ſeraglio.

From thence I went to the famous church of SANCTA SOPHIA, now converted into a moſque. There being already many deſcriptions extant, of this ancient fabrick, I ſhall only obſerve, that it was rebuilt, and adorned, by the Emperor JUSTINIAN, about the year of our LORD 500. It is highly eſteemed by architects, for the flatneſs of the dome, or cupola, which, it is ſaid, the moderns cannot imitate.

In time of war, CHRISTIANS are not permitted to enter the moſque. Nevertheleſs, we were conducted up a pair of back-ſtairs to the gallery, from whence we had a full view of the whole. The floor is laid with clean mats and carpets, having no ſeat, only one pulpit for the Mullah. The gallery is laid with marble, ſupported by about one hundred marble pillars, of various colours and ſizes, moſt of them, at leaſt, between five and ſix feet diameter. The whole of the inſide hath a noble and grand appearance. At the entry into the gallery, is an old veſtry, with the door cloſed up; of which a GREEK, of my acquaintance, told me the following ſhort ſtory, viz. A certain Mullah being in the veſtry, ſaw, or fancied that he ſaw, a man on horſeback, with

with a ſword in his hand, who bid him begone out of 1738.
that holy place, &c. This, like other tales of the ſame nature, was not long a ſecret; and was interpreted to have been no other than CONSTANTINE the Great. However fabulous the ſtory appears, the door of the veſtry hath been condemned ſince that time.

From SANCTA SOPHIA I was conducted to the Hippodrome, where the GREEKS uſed formerly to train their horſes to the menage, now called the ATT-MAYDAN; and is ſtill applied to the ſame uſe by the TURKS. It is a ſpacious oblong ſquare, having a pretty marble obelisk in the middle. On one ſide of it is a pillar of braſs, with ſerpents twining round it; this is ſomewhat defaced, and is about ten foot high.

In the great ſtreet, at ſome diſtance from the Hippodrome, ſtands another venerable monument of antiquity; a large and tall pillar, called the Burnt-pillar, becauſe it hath greatly ſuffered by a fire in the neighbourhood, which hath cracked it in diverſe places; this is a misfortune common to narrow ſtreets, and not to be remedied without a well regulated police. This pillar is of porphyry, about twenty yards high.

We went thence to ſee the grand reſervoir, built with intent of ſupplying the city with water in caſe of

1738. a ſiege. This muſt have coſt an immenſe ſum of money; for it is all of it under ground; above it are ſtreets and houſes. It is not far from the Hippodrome. Towards the water ſide, the covering of it is ſupported by a great number of arches, and many hundreds of ſtone pillars, of which not a few are fallen down, and the whole of it is going a-pace to decay. There was no water in it.

There is another ancient fabrick, known by the name of EDIKULY, or ſeven towers, ſtanding on an eminence to the weſtward; which is now a common priſon. Near the middle of the city ſtands a ſmall tower, called BELISARIUS; whether or not it was the houſe of that great and unfortunate general I could not learn.

Oppoſite to the ſeraglio, near the middle of the canal, ſtands a ſmall round tower, upon the ſummit of a ſmall rock, called LEANDER'S TOWER. This, with the foregoing, are the few remains of antiquity commonly ſhown to ſtrangers.

The haven, which divides the city from that diſtrict of it called PERA, for its extent and depth of water, may probably equal, perhaps ſurpaſs, the beſt in the known world, well fenced on all ſides by riſing grounds. Near the bottom of the haven, is a ſpacious and moſt conveni-

convenient yard for building ſhips and galleys, with ſuitable magazines and ware-houſes for keeping the cordage, guns, ammunition, and for every material requiſite for building and fitting men of war and galleys for the ſea. 1738.

Adjoining is a place called the bagnio, appropriated to the lodging and accommodating galley-ſlaves; where, it may be ſuppoſed, they do not paſs their time very agreeably.

My next walk was to ſee the Derviſes at worſhip; they are a religious order of the MAHOMETANS who have a moſque in PERA, built in a circular form, with a pulpit for the Mullah, and a gallery built in a nich, made in the circle, for the muſick. The ſermon being ended, the muſicians began on various inſtruments, which were like the EUROPEAN flutes and hautboys, upon which five of the Derviſes ſtood up, and danced round the moſque, in a frantick manner, turning themſelves round, as they advanced, with ſo quick a motion, that their faces were hardly diſtinguiſhable from other parts of their heads. They followed each other at certain diſtances; but an old man, of fourſcore years, outdid all the reſt in quickneſs of turning round. Yet, when he left off, he did not ſeem to be at all diſcompoſed

1738. poſed by the violence of the motion. This extravagant ſect make vows of poverty and chaſtity, travel over all the eaſt, where the religion of MAHOMET prevails, and are held in great eſteem, by the devout of that profeſſion.

The 9th of March, the army intended for HUNGARY, under the command of EGGENY-MAHOMET-BASHA, the Grand Viſier, began to file off to the camp aſſigned for them, about three miles to the northward of the city. The proceſſion continued four days; and, as uſual, when the Sultan himſelf, or the Grand Viſier, take the field in perſon, the troops are attended by all the different trades and artiſans to the place of encampment, each trade having the proper dreſs and badges of their reſpective profeſſion, with banners, muſick, &c.

The firſt day, the janizaries marched, with their Aga, or chief commander, at their head, followed by a numerous multitude of artiſans. The firſt, in proceſſion, was a plough drawn by painted oxen, with gilded horns. It would be tedious to mention the reſt particularly; I ſhall only obſerve, that ſome of this ragamuffian crew made frightful figures, being naked to the waſte, with ſabres run through the fleſhy part of their

their arms, and beſmeared with blood; a ſhocking ſpec- 1738.
tacle!

The ſecond day's proceſſion, was the pioniers and miners, with their different tools and utenſils.

The third day, the cannoniers marched.

The fourth day, the Viſier marched out, attended by the general officers of the army, a great many Spahis and Janizaries, and all the different trades of the town; among which rabble, were many ſuch banditti as above deſcribed, naked for the moſt part of the body, all bloody. The Grand Mufti was in the ſame coach with the Grand Viſier, and had the ALCORAN carried by a Mullah, who ſat likewiſe in the ſame coach, oppoſite to the Mufti; which was preceded by a number of ſingers, in their proper habits, ſinging as they went along. Before the coach, was carried the ſtandard of MAHOMET, which is a horſe's tail, ſaid to be brought from heaven by the angel GABRIEL to MAHOMET; and is held in great veneration, ſeldom appearing but on great ſolemnities; after which it is carried back to the ſeraglio, where it remains till the next occaſion.

When war is declared againſt any prince or ſtate, the horſe-tail is ſet up at the gate of the ſeraglio, called ALLA-CAPY, or the PORT of GOD, from whence the Grand

1738. Grand Seignor dates all his diſpatches; and, on that account, the court of the Grand Seignor is commonly called the OTTOMAN PORTE, and the SUBLIME PORTE. But when the Sultan is in the field, at the head of his army, he dates all his letters and orders from his ſtirrup. All generals who have three horſe-tails, are called Viſier; but the Grand Viſier, who is always prime miniſter, governs and directs all affairs relating to the ſtate, both foreign and domeſtick; next to him, in power, is the Kaymacan, who is his lieutenant; after him Niſangy Baſha, keeper of the ſeals; then Kap-adgee Baſha, chief porter; Kiſlar-agaſſy, the chief eunuch; theſe are the principal great officers at court. It happens often, that the Kiſlar-agaſſy hath more to ſay than all the reſt put together; for although the ladies live very retired, yet they are not ſo ignorant as is generally imagined. And, if I am not misinformed, matters of the greateſt conſequence are canvaſſed, and often ſettled in the ſeraglio, before they are preſented to the miniſtry. One thing is certain, that whoever wants a favour at court needs no better recommendation than a friend among the ladies.

Soon after my arrival, I had an invitation from the famous Count BONNEVAL, who then was ill of the gout

gout; but, in time of war, it was not thought fit that I ſhould viſit that gentleman. 1738.

March 15th, Sir EVERARD FAWKENER went to the camp to take leave of the Grand Viſier, as is uſual for all the foreign miniſters to do, on the like occaſions. We diſmounted at ſome diſtance from the tent of this great man, were conducted, by an officer, to a magnificent tent, near to that of the Viſier, and entertained with coffee, &c. for about a quarter of an hour; after which the ambaſſador, accompanied by the gentlemen of his retinue, went to the Viſier's tent, where a ſtool was prepared for his excellency; the gentlemen ſtood during the time the ambaſſador remained. The Viſier ſat, croſs-legged, on a ſopha raiſed about half a foot from the floor, which was all laid with rich carpets. Very near him ſtood a frame, on which were hung ſome muskets, ſabres, &c. of very curious workmanſhip, ornamented richly with gold, ſilver, and ſtones of value, as emeralds, rubies, &c. The TURKISH camps are, in general, very regular and clean.

The ſhort ceremony being over, we returned again to the city. After ſome days the Grand Viſier marched to ADRIANOPLE, in his way to HUNGARY.

Being about to leave this city, I ſhall detain the

1738. reader with no more particulars than the following ſhort obſervations.

In TURKY there are few families who have any diſtinguiſhing titles or honours, appertaining to them, which deſcend to their children. All titles of honour, and places of power and profit, in the Sultan's dominions, depend on perſonal merit, or the Sultan's favour, which dies with the poſſeſſor. The only two families, who have a juſt claim to nobility, are thoſe of DGIGGAL-OGLU and KUPERLY; who, for ſignal ſervices done to the empire, have peculiar privileges; one, in particular, that the Sultan, as it is ſaid, cannot condemn them to death. It ſeems, that, on a very critical conjuncture, when affairs were in great diſorder, the Sultan died, KUPERLY kept it a ſecret for ſix weeks; in which time, by his prudent conduct, the government was eſtabliſhed on a proper footing. Beſides theſe, there are deſcendents of their prophet MAHOMET's family, of which there are great numbers, who are diſtinguiſhed by wearing green, and enjoy ſome privileges.

Having nothing more to do at CONSTANTINOPLE, I am now about to return to ST. PETERSBURG. As I had a commiſſion from Sir EVERARD FAWKENER for the

Grand

Grand Viſier, who was then at ADRIANOPLE, I took 1738.
that road.

April 8th, after taking leave of my friends, I ſet out from CONSTANTINOPLE, accompanied by a tzauſh, or meſſenger, a janizary, and my own ſervant.

The 13th, in the morning, I came to the city of ADRIANOPLE, where I lodged, at the houſe of Mr. DAMIRAL, a GREEK gentleman, who is agent at this place for our ambaſſador, where I found a friendly reception.

The city of ADRIANOPLE is about forty leagues north-weſt from CONSTANTINOPLE, in a pleaſant country, inhabited by TURKS, GREEKS, and ſome JEWS. The Capuchins have alſo a convent here. The town is pretty large; and is remarkable for having a very noble grand moſque, with very high minorets, of excellent workmanſhip. The architect was a GREEK, of whom it is reported, that the Grand Seignor, being amazed at the extraordinary contrivance and execution which the architect exhibited in thoſe buildings, thought that nothing of mechaniſm was out of his reach, and ordered him to make himſelf wings, and to fly off from the top of one of the minorets; which the poor builder was forced to attempt; after flying a con-

1738. ſiderable diſtance, he fell among ſome tombs, and broke his neck. I do not vouch for the truth of the ſtory; but I was ſhown the tombs, in the neighbourhood, among which it is ſaid that he fell.

The 14th, I had a viſit from Monſieur PEISONELL, the FRENCH agent, and ſome of the Capuchin Fathers.

The 15th, I went to return the viſit at the convent. In coming through the market-place, in the way to my lodgings, I met with a very diſagreeable ſpectacle; which was two men, lying ſtark naked, without their heads, which had been juſt before cut off. They were ſaid to have been ſpies.

After diſcharging my commiſſion to the Grand Viſier, which I effected through Mr. DAMIRAL, and obtaining an order for poſt-horſes, I left ADRIANOPLE the 17th, and proceeded on my journey to the northward; in which I need not be particular, having mentioned moſt of the places in the former part of this relation. I took the neareſt way for YASSY in MOLDAVIA.

The 26th, we paſſed the DANUBE, in a boat, at a place called KALASS, a few leagues above ISMAYL.

The 29th, we arrived at the city of YASSY. The next day I waited on the Prince, who received me in a moſt

moſt friendly manner. He gave orders for horſes, and two of his guards, to conduct me to the frontiers of POLAND. He likewiſe ſent an officer to accompany me as far as NEMIROFF. I then diſcharged my tzauſh and janizary, who returned back to CONSTANTINOPLE. 1738.

May 1ſt, I left YASSY; and came, the next day, to SOROKA.

The 3d, I left SOROKA, paſſed the DNIESTER, and came to TAMAS-POLY, where I lodged.

The 5th, I got to NEMIROFF, and at this place delivered all my diſpatches for EUROPE to General RUSSOTSKY, to be forwarded according to addreſs.

The 10th, I arrived at KIOFF; and ſet out again the ſame day.

On the 17th of May I arrived at ST. PETERSBURG.

It is to be noted, all my dates are old ſtile.

I ſhall

I ſhall ſubjoin a liſt of all the ſtages and diſtances from ST. PETERSBURG to CONSTANTINOPLE. As I have, in a former journey, particularized the ſtages to MOSCO, I need not repeat them here.

		Verſts.
From St. Petersburg to the city of Moſco		734
From Moſco, towards Kioff,		
to	Sela Packra	30
the village of	Tzeniskoy	35
	Lykof-Vrague	40
	Dobrichach	35
Town of	Caluga	40
Town of	Lykvyn	30
Town of	Belof	40
Town of	Bolſhof	40
	Selo Glotovo	35
Town of	Kartzof	35
	Selo Samova	30
	Selo Tzaianka	30
Village of	Lieubuſh	30
Town of	Seyefski	30
	Tolſto Dubovo	40
	To be carried over	1254

		Verſts.
	Brought over	1254
From	Town of Gluchovo	30
to	Town of Korolevitz	39
	Town of Batturin	44
	Borzna	33
	Neſhina	48
	Noſofka	28
	Koſſelitz	38
	Semipologue	25
	Brovary	29
	City of Kioff	18
	From St. Petersburg to Kioff	1586

The verſt in Ruſſia conſiſts of 1166⅔ Engliſh yards; ſo that the diſtance from St. Petersburg to Kioff, being 1586 verſts, is 1051 $\frac{3}{10}$ Engliſh miles.

From Kioff to Soroka.

	Poliſh miles.		Poliſh miles.
From Kioff		Brought up	14
to Vaſſilkoff	5	From Samgorod	1
Belozyrkoff	6	to Golochuaſt	1
Shamarayofka	2	Pogrebiſha	2
Squeer	1	Spitzinitz	2
To be carried up	14	To be carried over	20

	Poliſh miles.
Brought over	20
From Otzeredno	1
to Lipovitz	1
Vytofsky	2
Kavalefka	1
Nemiroff	1
Petzery	2
Spykoff	2
Lefkovitz	1
Tamaz-Poly	3
Kleynbofka	2
Tzikanofka on the Dnieſter, on the bank oppoſite is Soroka	3
	39

Computing 6½ Engliſh miles to a Poliſh mile, the diſtance from Kioff to Soroka will be 253½ Engliſh miles.

From Soroka the frontier, to Yaſſy the capital of Moldavia, reckoning the Turkiſh ſahat, or hour, to be three Engliſh miles.

	Engliſh miles.
From Soroka	
to Kaynar	12
Hetſh	12
Meygura	24
River Pruth	12
City of Yaſſy	12
From Soroka to Yaſſy	72

From Yaſſy to Bender.

	Engliſh miles.
From Yaſſy	
to Roſinar	12
Voltzinitz	15
Koſhuſhna	24
Kiſhanoff	6
Bender	24
From Yaſſy to Bender	81

From Bender to the Danube along the deſert of Budjack.

	Engliſh miles.
From Bender	
to Kauſhan	12
Kongley	24
Tartarken	30
Town of Iſmayl	21
From Bender to Iſmayl	87

From Iſmayl to Conſtantinople.

	Engliſh miles.
From Iſmayl, croſs the Danube,	
to Tultzin	12
Babbadach	18
Kaybaly	18
Kodjalo	6
Iſtere	6
Danna-Kew	6
Kara-Su	12
To be carried up	78
Brought up	78
From Kabady	12
to Aly-Beg-Kiew	12
Bazartzick	24
Uſheny	6
Provady	24
Yeny-Kiew	9
Tzenggy	6
A Caravanſera	12
Aydoſs	12
Benglyr	9
Kara-Bunar	15
Faky	12
Kangry	12
Kirgliſs	24
Bourgaſs	24
Tzorby	30
Silivry	24
Buyuck Tzeckmiday	18
Conſtantinople	18
From Iſm. to Conſtant.	381

The whole diſtance from St. Petersburg to Conſtantinople, I take to be about 1925 Engliſh meaſured miles, of 1760 yards each mile.

The ſeveral diſtances as follow, viz.

From St. Petersburg to Kioff	1051	meaſured miles.
From Kioff to Soroka, the frontier of Moldavia, - - -	253	computed miles.
From Soroka to Yaſſy - - -	72	Do.
From Yaſſy to Bender - - -	81	Do.
From Bender to Iſmayl - - -	87	Do.
From Iſmayl to Conſtantinople	381	Do.
	1925	

Thus I have finiſhed my fourth eaſtern journey, which, in all probability, will be my laſt to that quarter of the globe. I would not adviſe any man to undertake this laſt, at ſuch a ſeaſon of the year as I did, or in time of war.

FINIS.

ALTERATIONS BY THE AUTHOR.

VOL. I.

Page.	Line.	Read.
12	13	ſeven weeks.
14	7	September 21ſt.
16	2	CHERCASKY.
18	11	November.
168	22	KATHERINA-BURG.
220	21	Maſlanitza.
251	2	ſheds.
ib.	11	*for* raiſins *r.* almonds.
299	16	URGA.
392	20	four or five hundred thouſand roubles.
338	11	ivory-ſticks.

VOL. II.

Page.	Line.	Read.
46	12	near the ſeventieth.
129	18	*dele* ly *in* quickly.
149	13	IRKUTSKY.
166		2*d col. l.* 7. *read* 3119.
332	*ult.*	could.

00085464

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 15 June, 2016